

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

William Caxton

Table of Contents

<u>Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete</u>	1
<u>William Caxton</u>	1
<u>INTRODUCTION</u>	4
<u>The Lyf of the Noble and Crysten Prynce, Charles the Grete</u>	9
<u>[CAXTON'S INTRODUCTION.]</u>	9
<u>Here begynnen the chapytres tytles of this book folowyng nombred for to fynde the more lyghtly the mater therin comprised</u>	10
<u>Here begynneth the first book whyche conteyneth thre partyes by the chapytres folowyng declared</u>	10
<u>Here begynneth the ij book whyche conteyneth thre partyes by chapytres ensyewyng declared</u>	10
<u>Here begynneth the iij book whiche conteyneth ij partyes by the chapytres folowyng declared</u>	12
<u>[Book I]</u>	14
<u>[Part i]</u>	14
<u>[Of the kynges of fraunce paynyms vnto kyng' cloys the first cristen kyng: capitulo primo]</u>	14
<u>How the kyng clodoneus paynym had' to wyf the noble doughter of the kyng of burgoyne: capitulo ij</u>	14
<u>How kyng' Cloys was admonested' by the quene clotildis affectuously that he shold' byleue in the crysten fayth, and' other maters: capitulo iij</u>	15
<u>How the kyng' Cloys was vycoryous of hys enemyes by cause he byleued' in Ihesu Cryste: Capitulo iijj</u>	16
<u>How the kyng' was baptysed' by saynt Remyge, in hys baptesme by myracle was brout the holy ampulle by an aungel fro heuen wherof euer after all the kynges of Fraunce been enoynted' in theyr conse-cracyon atte cyte of Raynes: capitulo v</u>	16
<u>The second' parte of the first book conteyneth fyue chapytres, and' speketh of the begynnyng' of kyng' Pepyn And' Charlemayn hys sone</u>	17
<u>How Pepyn by his prudence was chosen kyng' of Fraunce when the lygnage of kyng cloys faylled' in successyon: ca. j</u>	17
<u>Of kyng Charles after that he had' maad' many constytucyons wyth the Pope Adryan, how he was emperour of Rome: capitulo ij</u>	18
<u>Of the corpulence of kyng Charles, and' of the maner of hys lyung': capitulo iij</u>	19
<u>To what thyng kyng Charles hys sone and hys doughters were Instructe and' taughte to doo: capitulo iijj</u>	20
<u>Of the studye of kyng Charles, of hys lyuyng', of hys charytable werkes, and' other maters: capitulo v</u>	20
<u>The thyrd' parte of the fyrst book conteyneth thre chapytres, and' speketh how by reuelacion deuyne Charles delyuerd' the holy londe fro the honde of the paynyms</u>	21
<u>How the patryarke of Iherusalem sente to Charles for socours after that he was deiecte and' caste oute of the Turkes: capitulo primo</u>	21
<u>How Charles with a grete companye wente for to conquere the holy lande, and many other maters: capitulo ij</u>	21
<u>Of the relyques that themperour Charles brought fro constantynoble and' fro the holy londe, and' of the myracles that were doon: capitulo iij</u>	22
<u>Here begynneth the ij book of thys present werke, whyche conteyneth thre partyes by chapytres folowyng' declared'</u>	23
<u>The fyrst parte of the second book conteyneth xvj chapytres and' speketh of the batayll doon by Olyuer Fyerabras a meruayllous geaunte</u>	23
<u>How in a place which was called' mormyonde Charles abode folowyng' the warre ayenst the paynems, after a lytel prologue. The fyrst chapytre</u>	23
<u>Of Fyerabras how he came to excyte thexcersyte of Charles: capitulo ij [correction; sic = [j]]</u>	24
<u>How Richard' of Normandye sayd' to Charles what maner man Fyerabras was: ca. iij</u>	25

Table of Contents

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

<u>Of the answer of Roulland to the Emperour sodeynlye and' what it was: capitulo iiij.....</u>	25
<u>How the kyng charles and' Roulland' been repreued' by the auctour and' somewhat excused' vpon the debate aforesayd': ca. v.....</u>	26
<u>How Olyuer was dysposed to fyght agenst Fyerabras, notwythstondyng that he was hurt, after many wordes: capitulo vj.....</u>	27
<u>How Olyuer was requyred' by his fader reyner that he shold not fyght wyth the geaunt, but for al that he went forth: ca. vii.....</u>	29
<u>How Olyuer spake to Fyerabras, whyche sette noo thyng by hym, with other disputacions: capitulo viii.....</u>	29
<u>How after many dysputacyons Olyuer ayded' arme Fyerabras, and' of the ix meruayllous swerdes, And' how olyuer named' his name: ca. ix.....</u>	31
<u>How Olyuer and' fyerabras began to fyt, of the prayer of Charles for Olyuer, of other maters: capitulo x.....</u>	33
<u>How Olyuer made his prayer to god' whan he felte hym hurte: capitulo xj.....</u>	34
<u>How after a grete bataylle Olyuer conquerd' the bawme dranke therof at hys ease, and how he fyl to therthe whan hys hors was slayn: capitulo xij.....</u>	35
<u>How Fyerabras and' Olyuer foughten togyder afote merveyllously, and' of the prayer that Charles maad' for Olyuer: capitulo xiiij [correction: sic = viii].....</u>	35
<u>How at thys bataylle Fyerabras was vanquysshed' by Olyuer after that he had' recouerd' one of the swerdes of fyerabras: capitulo xiiij [correction: sic = viii].....</u>	37
<u>How fyerabras beyng vaynquysshed' byleued' in god', and' how he was borne by Olyuer, And' how Olyuer was assaylled' of the sarasyns and tormented': capitulo xv.....</u>	38
<u>How Olyuer was taken blynfeld' pyteously, myght not be socoured' by the Frensshe men: ca. xvj(Note: Ed. xvij.).....</u>	40
<u>The second' partye of the second' book conteyneth xvij chapytres speketh of the tormente of the barons of fraunce, how they that were taken spaken to ballant thadmyral of spayne.....</u>	41
<u>How Fyerabras was founden by Charles, and after was baptysed' and' heled' of his wonde: ca. primo....</u>	41
<u>How Olyuer his felowes were presented' to ballant thadmyral and' cruelly passyoned in pryson: capitulo ij.....</u>	42
<u>Of the pryson wherin that the Frensshe men were lodged', And how they were vysyted by the fayre Florypes doughter of the admyral, and' of the beaulte of hyr: ca. iij.....</u>	43
<u>How the frensshe men were put oute(Note: Ed. outo.) of pryson and were vysyted' by the noble mayde Floripes and' of the beaulte of hyr chaumbre: capitulo iij.....</u>	45
<u>How kyng' charles sente to Ballant thadmyral, seuen peres of Fraunce whyche wold' not haue goon: capitulo v.....</u>	46
<u>How the admyral sente xv kynges sarasyns to Charles for to haue ageyn fyerabras, which were recountred' by the peres of fraunce, and' slayn: capitulo vj.....</u>	47
<u>Of the meruayllous bridge of Mantryble; of the trybute there payed' for to passe ouer, and' how wyth fayr wordes the frenssh men passed ouer the said brydge: capitulo vii.....</u>	48
<u>How the barons came and' spake to the Admyrall, and' how they dyd' theyr message: capitulo viii.....</u>	50
<u>How by the moyen of florypes al the frensshe men were saued', and' lodged' togydre, and' the relyques shewed', and other thynges: capitulo ix.....</u>	52
<u>How Lucafer neuewe of the admyral vyolently entred' in to the chambre, after was slayn of duc Naymes in blowyng of the cool: capitulo x.....</u>	53
<u>How, by the counceyl of floripes, the frensshe men dyslodged' thadmyral fro his paleys wyth grete bataylle, and' how by enchaument a gyrdle was taken awaye fro the douter: ca. xj.....</u>	54
<u>How the barons were assyged' in the toure wyth Florypes and hyr maydens, which suffred grete</u>	

Table of Contents

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

<u>hungre, and' how the goddes by them were confounded': capitulo xij.....</u>	56
<u>How the peres of Fraunce went out of the toure, and dyd a grete bataylle. In which they recouerd' twenty sommyers charged' of vytaylle: capitulo xiiij.....</u>	57
<u>How guy of bourgoyn was taken of the sarasyns, beten vylaynously, and' demaunded' of thadmyral, and the complayntes that Florypes made for hym, other maters: capitulo xiiij.....</u>	58
<u>How the paynmys had' purposed' to haue hanged' Guye of bourgoyne, seeyng' the crysten men, whyche socoured' hym mytely: capitulo xv.....</u>	59
<u>How the peres of Fraunce aforesayd' were pourueyed' of vytaylles, and' after assyged' and' foughten by the paynmys: ca. xvj.....</u>	61
<u>How the toure was broken and' brente by enchaument, the barons in grete peryl of deth, and' restored' by assaulte maad' on the Paynmys: capitulo xvij.....</u>	62
<u>Here begynneth the thyrd' partye of the second' book which conteyneth xvj chapytres, And' speketh how the barons of fraunce were socoured the paynmys confused'.....</u>	63
<u>Of the moeuyng of the peres of fraunce for to goo shewe theyr affayres vnto kyng' Charles: And' how Rychard of Normandye was ordeyned' for to goo: capitulo primo.....</u>	64
<u>How after that rychard was departed, kyng claryon, a ryght myghty kyng', ranne after hym, the whyche was slayn by the sayd' Rychard valyauntly, of other thynges: capitulo ij.....</u>	65
<u>How Rychards hors cam passed' thurgh thexcersyte of the admyral, was seen knowen of the peres of Fraunce, in soo moche that they thought that duc Rychard' had' been deed': how the brydge of Mantryble was kepte: capitulo iij.....</u>	66
<u>How rychard of normandye passed the ryuer of flagot by myracle, by the moyen of a whyt hert which cam tofore hym: ca. iiij.....</u>	68
<u>How charles was in purpoos to retorne, wythout goyng ony ferther, by the counceyl of ganellon traytour, and his felowes: other maters: capitulo v.....</u>	68
<u>How after the complaynte of Charles, Rychard come vnto hym, whyche tolde to hym thaffayres of the peres of Fraunce: capitulo vj.....</u>	70
<u>How by the moyen counceyl of Rychard of Normandye, wyth iij other barons, the strong brydge of mantryble was wonne, not wythoute grete payne: And what maner man galafre was: capitulo vij.....</u>	71
<u>How by force and' strengthe of bataylle Charles entred' in to mantryble, after that Galafre was slayn, not wythstondyng' that alory the traytre was contrarye to hym: and' many other maters: capitulo viij.....</u>	73
<u>How Amyotte, a geantesse, wyth a sythe greued' gretely the crysten men, and' how hyr two sones were baptyسد of the Emperour Charles: capitulo ix.....</u>	74
<u>How the peres of Fraunce were assaylled' more strongly than euer they were, And' the toure quasi put to therthe, and' recomforted' by the holy relyques, by them adoured, and other maters: capitulo x.....</u>	76
<u>How the peres of Fraunce had' tydynges of(Note: orig. yf.) thoost of charles, and' the admyral also: and' how Ganellon bare hym merueyllously, which allone was sente to the admyral, and' what he dyd': capitulo xi.....</u>	77
<u>How Charles emperour ordeyned' ten bataylles, and how they dyd' were recounted' of the pyssaunce of the admyral, where as themperour dyd' meruaylles, and' of other maters: capitulo xii.....</u>	79
<u>How in thys bataylle folowyng', Sortybrant was slayne by Reyner, fader of Olyuer, and after how thadmyral dyd' meruaylles and' grete ennoye to the frensshe men: capitulo xiiij.....</u>	80
<u>How the peres of Fraunce whyche were in the toure came oute whan they sawe the hoost, how thadmyral was taken holden prysonner: capitulo xiiij.....</u>	81
<u>How ballant, thadmyrall, for ony admonycon that was shewed' to hym, wold not be baptyسد, and how after, guy of bourgoyn espoused florypes, was crowned kyng, and she quene of that contreye: capitulo xv.....</u>	81
<u>How Florypes delyuerd the reliques to themperour, and how they were proued' by myracle, of the</u>	

Table of Contents

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

<u>retournyng' of Charles, and of the ende of thys book, capitulo xvj.....</u>	83
<u>Here begynneth the iij book, whyche conteyneth two partyes, by the chapytres folowyng declared'.....</u>	84
<u>The fyrst partye of the thyrd book conteyneth xiiij chapytres, and speketh of the warres made in spayne, and' of two meruayllous geauntes.....</u>	84
<u>How Saynt James appyered' to Charles, and how, by the moyen and' the conduyte of the sterres, he went in to galyce, what cytees he subdued: ca. j.....</u>	84
<u>Of the cytees gotten in espayne by charles, how somme were by hym destroyed'. capitulo ij.....</u>	85
<u>Of the grete ydole that was in a cyte, whyche coude not be smyton down, and of the condycyons and' sygnes therof: ca. iij.....</u>	85
<u>Of the chyrche of saynt James in galyce, and' of dyuers other whyche Kyng' Charles founded: capitulo iiij.....</u>	86
<u>How, after that Aygolant the geaunt had taken spayne put to deth the crysten people, Charles recouerd' it, and' other maters: capitulo v.....</u>	86
<u>How Aygolant sent to charles that he shold' come to hym trustely for to make Iust warre, and' how Charles in habyte dyssymyled' spake to hym, and' of other maters: capitulo vj.....</u>	87
<u>How Charles, accompanied with moche peple, retorned' in to the place aforesayd toke the cyte of agenne, other maters: capitulo vij.....</u>	88
<u>Of the vertuous operacions that charles made whan he was retorned' in to fraunce, what barons he had' in hys companye, of theyr puyssaunce: ca. viij.....</u>	88
<u>Of the tryews of Charles of Aygolant, and of the deth of hys peple, wherfore aygolant was not baptysed': capitulo ix.....</u>	89
<u>Of the deth of aygolant and of his peple, how moche crysten peple were slayn by concupyscence of syluer, of crysten men founden dede by myracle: ca. x.....</u>	90
<u>Of feragus the merueyllous geaunt, how he bare alwaye wyth hym the barons of fraunce wyth out daunger, how Roulland' faught wyth hym: capitulo xj.....</u>	91
<u>How on the morne rolland' and' Feragus foughten dysputeden the fayth, and by what moyen Feragus was slayn by Roulland': capitulo xij.....</u>	92
<u>How Charles went to Cordube, where the kyng of the same place and' the kyng' of Cybylle abode, for their destructyon: ca. xiiij.....</u>	92
<u>How the chyrche of Saynt James was halowed by tharchebysshop Turpyn, the chyrches of spayne subgettes therto, and' of other pryncypal chyrches: capitulo xiiij.....</u>	93
<u>The second' parte of the thyrd book conteyneth x chapytres, speketh of the treason made by ganellon, and' of the deth of the pyeres of Fraunce.....</u>	94
<u>How the treason was comprysed' by Ganellon, and of the deth of crysten men, how ganellon is repreuyd by thauctour: capitulo primo.....</u>	94
<u>Of the deth of kyng Marfurius, and' how Roulland' was hurt wyth foure speres mortally after that al his peple were slayn: capitulo ij.....</u>	95
<u>How Rolland deyed' holyly, after many martyres orysones made to god ful deuoutely, of the complaynte maad' for hys swerde durandal: capitulo iij.....</u>	96
<u>Of the vysyon of the deth of Roulland', and' of the sorowe of Charles, and' how he complayned' hym pyetously, other maters: capitulo iiij.....</u>	97
<u>How Olyuer was founden slayn, and' of the deth of the sarasyns, of the deth of ganellon, whyche was hydous: capitulo v.....</u>	98
<u>How after the thynges afore sayd' charles gaf thankynges preysynges to god saynt Denys, of the constytucions that he made in fraunce: capitulo vj.....</u>	99
<u>How Charles wente in to Almayne, where he deyed' holyly, And of hys deth shewed to Turpyn, and' of hys buryeng' Imperyally: capitulo vij.....</u>	99

Table of Contents

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

<u>The recapitulacion of alle thys werke, of his deth at Acon, of hys sepulture: capitulo viij.....</u>	100
<u>The excusacyon of thauctour. ix.....</u>	101
<u>Thenuoye of thauctour: ca. x.....</u>	101

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

William Caxton

This page copyright © 2002 Blackmask Online.

<http://www.blackmask.com>

- INTRODUCTION.
- The Lyf of the Noble and Crysten Prynce, Charles the Grete.
- [CAXTON'S INTRODUCTION.]
- Here begynnen the chapytres tytles of this book folowyng nombred for to fynde the more lyghtly the mater therin comprised.
- Here begynneth the first book whyche conteyneth thre partyes by the chapytres folowyng declared.
- Here begynneth the ij book whyche conteyneth thre partyes by chapytres ensyewyng declared.
- Here begynneth the iij book whiche conteyneth ij partyes by the chapytres folowyng declared.
- [Book I]
- [Part i]
- [Of the kynges of fraunce paynmys vnto kyng' cloys the first cristen kyng: capitulo primo]
- How the kyng clodoneus paynym had' to wyf the noble daughter of the kyng of burgoyne: capitulo ij
- How kyng' Cloys was admonested' by the quene clotildis affectuously that he shold' byleue in the crysten fayth, and' other maters: capitulo iij
- How the kyng' Cloys was vycoryous of hys enemyes by cause he byleued' in Ihesu Cryste: Capitulo iiiij
- How the kyng' was baptysed' by saynt Remyge, in hys baptesme by myracle was brout the holy ampulle by an aungel fro heuen wherof euer after all the kynges of Fraunce been enoynted' in theyr conse-cracyon atte cyte of Raynes: capitulo v.
- The second' partye of the first book conteyneth fyue chapytres, and' speketh of the begynnyng' of kyng' Pepyn And' Charlemayn hys sone.
- How Pepyn by his prudence was chosen kyng' of Fraunce when the lygnage of kyng cloys faylled' in successyon: ca. j
- Of kyng Charles after that he had' maad' many constytucyons wyth the Pope Adryan, how he was emperour of Rome: capitulo ij
- Of the corpulence of kyng Charles, and' of the maner of hys lyung': capitulo iij
- To what thyng kyng Charles hys sone and hys doughters were Instructe and' taughte to doo: capitulo iiiij
- Of the studye of kyng Charles, of hys lyung', of hys charytable werkes, and' other maters: capitulo v.
- The thyrd' parte of the fyrst book conteyneth thre chapytres, and' speketh how by reuelacion deuyne Charles delyuerd' the holy londe fro the honde of the paynmys.
- How the patryarke of Iherusalem sente to Charles for socours after that he was deiecte and' caste oute of the Turkes: capitulo primo.
- How Charles with a grete companye wente for to conquere the holy lande, and many other maters: capitulo ij
- Of the relyques that themperour Charles brought fro constantynoble and' fro the holy londe, and' of the myracles that were doon: capitulo iij
- Here begynneth the ij book of thys present werke, whyche conteyneth thre partyes by chapytres folowyng' declared'.
- The fyrst partye of the second book conteyneth xvj chapytres and' speketh of the batayll doon by Olyuer Fyerabras a meruayllous geaunte.
- How in a place which was called' mormyonde Charles abode folowyng' the warre ayenst the paynems, after a lytel prologue. The fyrst chapytre.

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

- Of Fyerabras how he came to excyte the excersyte of Charles: capitulo ij
- How Richard' of Normandy sayd' to Charles what maner man Fyerabras was: ca. iij
- Of the answer of Roulland to the Emperour sodeynlye and' what it was: capitulo iiij
- How the kyng charles and' Roulland' been repleued' by the auctour and' somewhat excused' vpon the debate aforesayd': ca. v
- How Olyuer was dysposed to fyght agenst Fyerabras, notwythstondyng that he was hurt, after many wordes: capitulo vj
- How Olyuer was requyred' by his fader reyner that he shold not fyght wyth the geaunt, but for al that he went forth: ca. viij
- How Olyuer spake to Fyerabras, whyche sette noo thyng by hym, with other disputacions: capitulo viij
- How after many dysputacyons Olyuer ayded' arme Fyerabras, and' of the ix meruayllous swerdes, And' how olyuer named' his name: ca. ix
- How Olyuer and' fyerabras began to fyt, of the prayer of Charles for Olyuer, of other maters: capitulo x
- How Olyuer made his prayer to god' whan he felte hym hurte: capitulo xj
- How after a grete bataylle Olyuer conquerd' the bawme dranke therof at hys ease, and how he fyl to therthe whan hys hors was slayn: capitulo xij
- How Fyerabras and' Olyuer foughten togyder afote merveyllously, and' of the prayer that Charles maad' for Olyuer: capitulo xiiij
- How at thys bataylle Fyerabras was vanquysshed' by Olyuer after that he had' recouerd' one of the swerdes of fyerabras: capitulo xiiij
- How fyerabras beyng vaynquysshed' byleued' in god', and' how he was borne by Olyuer, And' how Olyuer was assaylled' of the sarasyns and tormented': capitulo xv
- How Olyuer was taken blynfeld' pyteously, myght not be socoured' by the Frensshe men: ca. xvij (Note: Ed. xvij.)
- The second' partye of the second' book conteyneth xvij chapytres speketh of the tormente of the barons of fraunce, how they that were taken spaken to ballant thadmyral of spayne.
- How Fyerabras was founden by Charles, and after was baptysed' and' heled' of his wonde: ca. primo
- How Olyuer his felowes were presented' to ballant thadmyral and' cruelly passyoned in pryson: capitulo ij
- Of the pryson wherin that the Frensshe men were lodged', And how they were vysyted by the fayre Florypes daughter of the admyral, and' of the beaulte of hyr: ca. iij
- How the frensshe men were put oute (Note: Ed. outo.) of pryson and were vysyted' by the noble mayde Floripes and' of the beaulte of hyr chaumbre: capitulo iij
- How kyng' charles sente to Ballant thadmyral, seuen peres of Fraunce whyche wold' not haue goon: capitulo v
- How the admyral sente xv kynges sarasyns to Charles for to haue ageyn fyerabras, which were recounted' by the peres of fraunce, and' slayn: capitulo vj
- Of the meruayllous bridge of Mantryble: of the trybute there payed' for to passe ouer, and' how wyth fayr wordes the frenssh men passed ouer the said brydge: capitulo vij
- How the barons came and' spake to the Admyrall, and' how they dyd' theyr message: capitulo viij
- How by the moyen of florypes al the frensshe men were saued', and' lodged' togydre, and' the relyques shewed', and other thynges: capitulo ix
- How Lucafer neuewe of the admyral vyolently entred' in to the chambre, after was slayn of duc Naymes in blowyng of the cool: capitulo x
- How, by the counceyl of floripes, the frensshe men dyslodged' thadmyral fro his paleys wyth grete bataylle, and' how by enchaument a gyrdle was taken awaye fro the douter: ca. xj
- How the barons were assyged' in the toure wyth Florypes and hyr maydens, which suffred grete hungre, and' how the goddes by them were confounded': capitulo xij
- How the peres of Fraunce went out of the toure, and dyd a grete bataylle, In which they recouerd' twenty sommyers charged' of vytaylle: capitulo xiiij
- How guy of bourgoyn was taken of the sarasyns, beten vylaynously, and' demaunded' of thadmyral, and the complayntes that Florypes made for hym, other maters: capitulo xiiij

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

- How the paynymys had' purposed' to haue hanged' Guye of bourgoyne. seeyng' the crysten men. whyche socoured' hym mytely: capitulo xv
- How the peres of Fraunce aforesayd' were pourueyed' of vytaylles. and' after assyged' and' foughten by the paynymys: ca. xvj
- How the toure was broken and' brente by enchaument. the barons in grete peryl of deth. and' restored' by assaulte maad' on the Paynymys: capitulo xvij
- Here begynneth the thyrd' partye of the second' book which conteyneth xvj chapytres. And' speketh how the barons of fraunce were socoured the paynymys confused'.
- Of the moeuyng of the peres of fraunce for to goo shewe theyr affayres vnto kyng' Charles: And' how Rychard of Normandye was ordeyned' for to goo: capitulo primo
- How after that rychard was departed. kyng claryon. a ryght myghty kyng'. ranne after hym. the whyche was slayn by the sayd' Rychard valyauntly. of other thynges: capitulo ij
- How Rychards hors cam passed' thurgh thexcersyte of the admyral. was seen knowen of the peres of Fraunce. in soo moche that they thought that duc Rychard' had' been deed': how the brydge of Mantryble was kepte: capitulo iij
- How rychard of normandye passed the ryuer of flagot by myracle. by the moyen of a whyt hert which cam tofore hym: ca. iiij
- How charles was in purposos to retorne. wythout goyng ony ferther. by the counceyl of ganellon traytour. and his felowes: other maters: capitulo v
- How after the complaynte of Charles. Rychard come vnto hym. whyche tolde to hym thaffayres of the peres of Fraunce: capitulo vj
- How by the moyen counceyl of Rychard of Normandye. wyth iij other barons. the strong brydge of mantryble was wonne. not wythoute grete payne: And what maner man galafre was: capitulo vij
- How by force and' strengthe of bataylle Charles entred' in to mantryble. after that Galafre was slayn. not wythstondyng' that alory the traytre was contrarye to hym: and' many other maters: capitulo viij
- How Amyotte. a geantesse. wyth a sythe greued' gretely the crysten men. and' how hyr two sones were baptysed of the Emperour Charles: capitulo ix
- How the peres of Fraunce were assaylled' more strongly than euer they were. And' the toure quasi put to therthe. and' recomforted' by the holy relyques. by them adoured. and other maters: capitulo x
- How the peres of Fraunce had' tydynges of (Note: orig. yf.) thoost of charles. and' the admyral also: and' how Ganellon bare hym merueyllously. which allone was sente to the admyral. and' what he dyd': capitulo xi
- How Charles emperour ordeyned' ten bataylles. and how they dyd' were recountred' of the puyssaunce of the admyral. where as themperour dyd' meruaylles. and' of other maters: capitulo xij
- How in thys bataylle folowyng'. Sortybrant was slayne by Reyner. fader of Olyuer. and after how thadmyral dyd' meruaylles and' grete ennoye to the frencshe men: capitulo xiiij
- How the peres of Fraunce whyche were in the toure came oute whan they sawe the hoost. how thadmyral was taken holden prysonner: capitulo xiiij
- How ballant. thadmyrall. for ony admonycyon that was shewed' to hym. wold not be baptysed. and how after. guy of bourgoyn espoused florypes. was crowned kyng. and she quene of that contreye: capitulo xv
- How Florypes delyuerd the reliques to themperour. and how they were proued' by myracle. of the retournyng' of Charles. and of the ende of thys book. capitulo xvj
- Here begynneth the iij book. whyche conteyneth two partyes. by the chapytres folowyng declared'.
- The fyrst partye of the thyrd book conteyneth xiiij chapytres. and speketh of the warres made in spayne. and' of two meruayllous geantes.
- How Saynt Iames appyered' to Charles. and how. by the moyen and' the conduyte of the sterres. he went in to galyce. what cytees he subdued: ca. j
- Of the cytees gotten in espayne by charles. how somme were by hym destroyed'. capitulo ij.
- Of the grete ydole that was in a cyte. whyche coude not be smyton down. and of the condycyons and' sygnes therof: ca. iij
- Of the chyrche of saynt Iames in galyce. and' of dyuers other whyche Kyng' Charles founded: capitulo iiij

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

- How, after that Aygolant the geaunt had taken spayne put to deth the crysten people, Charles recouerd' it, and' other maters: capitulo v
- How Aygolant sent to charles that he shold' come to hym trustely for to make Iust warre, and' how Charles in habyte dyssymyled' spake to hym, and' of other maters: capitulo vj
- How Charles, accompanied with moche peple, retorned' in to the place aforesayd toke the cyte of agenne, other maters: capitulo vij
- Of the vertuouos operacions that charles made whan he was retorned' in to fraunce, what barons he had' in hys companye, of theyr puyssaunce: ca. viij
- Of the tryews of Charles of Aygolant, and of the deth of hys peple, wherfore aygolant was not baptysed': capitulo ix
- Of the deth of aygolant and of his peple, how moche crysten peple were slayn by concupyscence of syluer, of crysten men founden dede by myracle: ca. x
- Of feragus the merueyllous geaunt, how he bare alwaye wyth hym the barons of fraunce wyth out daunger, how Roulland' faught wyth hym: capitulo xj.
- How on the morne rolland' and' Feragus foughten dysputeden the fayth, and by what moyen Feragus was slayn by Roulland': capitulo xij
- How Charles went to Cordube, where the kyng of the same place and' the kyng' of Cybylle abode, for their destructyon: ca. xij
- How the chyrche of Saynt Iames was halowed by tharchebysshop Turpyn, the chyrches of spayne subgettes therto, and' of other pryncypal chyrches: capitulo xiiij
- The second' parte of the thyrd book conteyneth x chapytres, speketh of the treason made by ganellon, and' of the deth of the pyeres of Fraunce.
- How the treason was comprysed' by Ganellon, and of the deth of crysten men, how ganellon is repreuyd by thauctour: capitulo primo
- Of the deth of kyng Marfurius, and' how Roulland' was hurt wyth foure speres mortally after that al his peple were slayn: capitulo: ij
- How Rolland deyed' holyly, after many martyres orysons made to god ful deuoutely, of the complaynte maad' for hys swerde durandal: capitulo iij
- Of the vysyon of the deth of Roulland', and' of the sorowe of Charles, and' how he complayned' hym pyetously, other maters: capitulo iiij
- How Olyuer was founden slayn, and' of the deth of the sarasyns, of the deth of ganellon, whyche was hydous: capitulo v
- How after the thynges afore sayd' charles gaf thankynges preysynges to god saynt Denys, of the constytucions that he made in fraunce: capitulo vj
- How Charles wente in to Almayne, where he deyed' holyly, And of hys deth shewed to Turpyn, and' of hys buryeng' Imperyally: capitulo vij
- The recapitulacion of alle thys werke, of his deth at Acon, of hys sepulture: capitulo viij
- The excusacyon of thauctour. ix
- The nuoye of thauctour: ca. x

TRANSLATED FROM
THE FRENCH BY WILLIAM CAXTON

INTRODUCTION.

THE present volume, completing Part III. of the English Charlemagne Romance series, requires but little introduction. I have already referred to it in my edition of *Sir Ferumbras*, Introd. pp. viii, ix. It contains the whole life of Charlemagne, with a brief sketch of the early kings of France, and includes all the incidents narrated in *Sir Ferumbras*, *The Sowdone of Babyloyne*, *Roland and Vernagu*, and the *Song of Roland*.

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

Caxton's "Lyf of the Noble and Crysten Prynce, Charles the Grete" survives only in the unique copy preserved in the British Museum (Press Mark c. 10, b. 9). It is a folio volume, containing 96 leaves, the signatures running from A ij to M viij, and is perfect, but without title–page. The colophon tells us that the "werke was fynssshed in the reducyng of hit in to Englysshe the xvij day of Juyn, the second yere of kyng Rychard the thyrd, and the yere of our lord MCCCCLXXXV, and enprynted the fyrst day of decembre the same of our lord, the fyrst yere of kyng Harry the seuenth."

The type is that classed by Mr. Blades as 4*. The pages have two columns, each containing 39 lines, and each line measuring 2 3/8 inches. There are neither folios nor catchwords. The initial woodcut letters are 3 lines deep.

In 1743 the volume was sold by R. Harley to Osborne the bookseller, the price not mentioned. In 1773 it became the property of J. Ratcliffe at a cost of £13, and in 1776 it was sold by him to George III for £4. 4. 0.

As Caxton himself tells us, the work here reprinted is a translation of the French prose romance of Fierabras, itself a compilation partly from the *Speculum Historiale* of Vincent de Beauvais, and partly from the old French romance of Fierabras. The exploits of Charlemagne were related in numerous histories and romances, both in French and Latin, in prose and in verse, as early as the 12th and 13th centuries. From the envoy of the anonymous author of the original French version we learn how Henry Bolomyer, a canon of Lausanne, induced him to gather together into one connected narrative these disjointed fragments. A comparison of his work with that of Vincent of Beauvais shows clearly that his researches were by no means confined to the *Speculum Historiale*. I have already given a short account of the original French work. (Note: Introd. to *Sir Ferumbras*, pp. vi, vii.) One version in the Grenville Library, 10531, is doubly unique, being not only the only copy of that particular version known to be in existence, but also the only production of the press of Symon du Jardin, at Geneva, which has come down to us. Brunet had heard of it, but doubted its existence (*Suppl.* II. p. 231). It is undated and without signatures, pagination, or illustrations.

A second version of the original French is also preserved in the same library, No. 10532. It also is a folio volume of 65 leaves, signatures running from A j to L v. On L v b is a woodcut similar to that at the end of the copy already described. This also is unique, and has the following colophon: "*Cy finist Fierabras imprime a lyon lan de grace mil qualtre cens quatre vingtz et seize. Le xx iour de novembre.*" There are numerous woodcuts throughout the work, evidently copied from the same source as those in the Royal *Fierabras* described below, but much coarser and plainer. They are also frequently reversed, and, as in the royal copy, the same woodcut is at times made to serve for two or more incidents of a similar character.

In the library of the late Mr. Huth is a version, undated, in folio, black letter, with woodcuts, and the colophon: "*Cy finist Fierabras. Imprime a lyon par maistre Guillaume le roy. Le cincquiesme Jour du moys de Juilliet. Deo gracias.*" It contains 108 leaves, and is the copy described by Brunet. It appears to have belonged originally to the library of the Academy at Lyons. In the same library is a version in German containing 53 leaves, of which another copy is in the British Museum. (Note: See *Sir Ferumbras*, Introd. p. vii.)

The copy of the French *Fierabras* which I have used for comparison with the English translation, is that preserved in the Royal Library (Press mark, C. 6, b. 12). It is a folio volume of 115 leaves, without title–page. Woodcuts are freely introduced. On the back of sign. A i. is a large one representing Fierabras on horseback, and another on O 5 representing Charlemagne on his throne, and surrounded by his douzeperes. The preface begins on A ij, the index on A ij b, and the text on A vj. The colophon runs: "*Cy finist Fierabras. Imprime a genesue Par maistre Loys Garbin bourgeois de la dicte cite. Lan mil cccc. lxxxij. et Le xij iour de moys de Mais. Deo gracias. Amen.*" The woodcuts are in many cases most comical: perhaps the most ludicrous are those which are intended to represent Floripas killing Britamont, and Richard swimming the torrent of Flagot. In one in which the sacred relics are shown, only three nails appear, and in two others the Saracens are represented as bombarding the tower of Aigremont with cannons.

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

In a few instances the same cut is employed to represent two incidents of a similar character. Thus that representing Oliver before Balan is also used for Guy before the Sultan.

In his translation, Caxton has followed his original so closely and even slavishly, that at times it is difficult, if not impossible, to understand his meaning without a reference to the language of the original. Frequently he has used the very words of the French author, and still more frequently he has merely given them an English dress. Caxton probably is responsible for the introduction of more French words into our language than any other writer.

In his epilogue Caxton tells us that he undertook the rendering into English of this Lyf of Charles the Grete at the instigation of "a good and synguler frend, Maister wylliam daubeny, one of the tresirers of the Jewellys of the noble and moost crysten kyng, our naturel and souerayn lord late of noble memorye kyng Edward the fourth." I have endeavoured to identify this Sir William Daubeny, and to ascertain the nature of the duties pertaining to his office as keeper of the jewels. As to the latter

The copy of the *Liber Niger Domus Regis Anglie*, believed to be that of Edward IV. in the Harleian MS 642, has the following section on leaf 49, &c. on the Keeper of the Jewels, his clerk, yoman, groom, chariot, &c.

Office of Jewelhouse

hath an Architector callid Clarke of the Kinges or keeper of Joyalx, or Theasaurer of the Chambre: this officer taketh bui Indenture betwixt him and the Kinge, all that he findes in his office of gold, siluer, pretious stones, and the markes of euery thinge. Alsoe he receaueth the yerele guiftes by Record of the Chamberlaine. Item he receaueth by Indenture of the Theasaurer of England, And by ouersight of the Chamberlaine sitting in the Kingis Chambre or in the hall with a person of like seruice, And for his Chambre at night dimidium cheate loafe, one quart wyne, one gallon of ale; And for winter Liurey, one perche de wax, one candle wax, two candels paris, one dimidium tallwood, and present in Court vij^d. ob. In Checkerrolle and cloathing with howsold for winter and sommer, or of the Countinghouse xl^s.: his Liurey is as Knightes, and if he be sicke, he taketh in eating daies like the Squires for the bodie when they bin lett blood or sicke, &c. Also in this offise is a clarke vnder him in the hall eatinge, taking for his liurey at night, dimidium gallon ale, one candle paris, dimidium tallwood, shide and cloathing by the Countinghouse, or yerele twentie shillinges. And if he be sike, he taketh for all day one loafe of bread, one messe of gret meate, dimidium gallon ale. And for this office a yoman eating in the hall with yomen of Chambre, taking for his wages in the Countinghouse, if he be present, allowed by the Checkerrolle, threepence; And cloathing with the housold winter and summer for chances and all other part, or eighteene shillinges, besides his reward of the Jewelhouse for sure and diligent keeping of the Kinges Joalxe yerele &c. And if he be sicke, he taketh such Liurey as doth the Clerke. Also in this office a groome eating dayly in the office, taking for his liurey one loafe, one messe of grete meate, dimidium gallon ale: And he setteth in the Liuries. For this office in season, one candle wax, two candles paris, one tallwood dimidium, And Rushes and litter for this office all the yere of the Sergeant Vsher of hall and Chambre. Also this groome fetting nightly for this office one gallon of ale: he helpeth to trusse and beare to the Charriott, and awaiteth thervpon the safeguard; and the yoman also to attend vpon this carriage. And this office hath also lodgeing in the Countrie towne for all these horses and seruantes suffisauntly by the herbergier. And the chiefe of this office to haue into this Court two waiters, and the Clerke one honest seruant. The remenant goo to their lodgeing in the Countrey. And the yoman and groome haue one seruant. And for this office is assigned a Charriott with seauen horses and all there apparell, horse-meate, shoeing, and the yomen and groomis wagis therefore, foundyn of the charge of Theasaurer of housold to carrie the stuff of the Kinges in this office, and none other mans, by the ouersight of the Controller, betwixt the Theasaurer of housold, and this officer, be many interchaunges of siluer vessell, hoole and brooke, receaued or deliuered by officers by Indentures &c. As it will appeare in The Accompt of housold. And as for othir thinges touching this office, behold in the title *De Oblationibus* (Note: *Vide de hoc antea*: folio. 15. b. [On Gifts by the King in charity, &c.]) *Regis* capitulid before. all thinges of this office inward or outward, cometh and goeth by the knowledge of the Kinge, and by the Chamberlaines Record. Also if any Knight or Squire presume to weare the Kinges liurey, but if he come ther by authoritie, or ellys by record in this office./

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

Thanks to the kindness of Mr. Selby of H.M. Record Office and Mr. Furnivall, I have been enabled to identify Sir W. Daubeny, and to give some interesting particulars relating to him. We first meet with his name in 1480–1, when he was appointed Searcher in the Port of London. (*Note*:

The following note is derived from a bundle of Searchers' Accounts for the period: [*Ancient Miscellanea*. (Exch. Q. R.) Searchers' Accounts. Bundle 692. J.P.R. 2110.]

1^l, Hen. VII } London. Account by John Lyn who was appointed by letters patent dated 22 Sept. 1 Hen. VII. Searcher in the port of London, to wit, from 22 Sept. / to Mich. 6 Hen. VII., William Dawbeney late Searcher. / membrane.

This Account extending over five years and 8 days gives the sum received as *nil*.

This record states the duties to be "*ad explorandum per se in propria persona sua, et non per substitutum, omnes naves et batellas extra regnum Anglie transeuntes, et ad idem regnum venientes in portibus et locis predictis [i. e. in portu Civitatis Londonie], et ad scrutinium faciendum de omnibus navibus et batellis hujusmodi, et de personis de quibus sinistra suspicio haberi poterit, quod lane, pelles lanute, coria, panni, aut mercimonia costumabilia non cokettata nec costumata in eisdem navibus, aut aurum vel argentum in pecunia numerata, aut masa vel plata seu focalia carcata seu posita fuerunt; vel si alique persone bullas litteras instrumenta vel processus vel aliqua alia Regi vel suditis Regis prejudicialia infra vel extra regnum Regis predictum, detuleri contra proclamaciones et inhibuciones ex parte Regis inde factas, Habendum et occupandum officium predictum quamdiu Regi placuerit, una cum medietate forisfacture predictae.*"

) The substance of the Patent Roll is as follows:

9 Novr, 20 Edw. IV, 1480. Memb. 21. Appointment of Wm. Daubeny as Searcher in the Port of London other places adjoining the same, with the usual fees emoluments, also the half of all forfeit, was seized to the King's use. His substitute or substitutes may act for him.

About the same time in a "Roll of Accounts, Michaelmas, 20 Edw. IV," there is an entry that John Barker of London, Goldsmith, had received 100*l* from *William Daubeny* in part payment of 80 butts of malmsey purchased by him for the use of the King's army. (*Note*: Exchequer Issue Roll, Hen. III. to Edw. VI, ed. F. Devon, Appendix, p. 500.)

In 1483–4 he was re-appointed to the office of Searcher of the Port to Richard III. In the Patent Roll his previous appointment to the same office under Edward V. is referred to, and he is further described as Clerk of the Jewels. In the Calr. of the Patent Rolls, Ric. III. Appx. to 9th Report of Deputy Keeper of Records, p. 34, the following particulars relating to Sir W. Daubeny are given:

- 1 Ric. III., p. 2, 1483–4. Membrane 20 (4) 16 Dec. Appointment of *William Daubeny*, clerk of the jewels, as searcher in the port of London, with a grant of half of all the forfeitures, in as full a manner as *William Merston*, esq. enjoyed the same: which office the said *William Daubeny* fills by virtue of a patent of Edward V. the bastard [entry 39], *ib.* p. 39, Membrane 7(19).
- 11 Mar. Release to *William Daubeny* (or *Dabeney*), searcher in the port of London, of all arrears of accounts, &c. to 6 March last [entry 133].
- *ib.* p. 42, Membrane 2 (24).
- 8 April. Appointment of John Wode, knt, Treasurer of England, Robert Brakenbury, Constable of the Tower of London, Master *William Lacy*, Master *William Dawbney*, and Master *Robert Rydon*, as Commissaries General in the office of the Admiralty in England
- *ib.* p. 67, Memb. 17 (9). 1 Ric. III, p. 4, 1483–4.

- 24 April. Grant to William Dawbeney, clerk of the jewels to Edward IV., of an annuity of 10*l.* out of a farm in Watford (Northampton), (2) by the hands of Eustace of Burneby and Matill his wife, to hold the same until the gift, for life, of an office of 20*l.* yearly value; further grant in survivorship to the

said *William Dawbeney* and Joan his wife of an annuity of 20 marks, the former patents of 22 June, 21 Edw. IV. (p. 2, m. 12), and 1 May, (*Note:* 1 March: in the patent roll of 21 Edw. IV.) 21 Edw. IV. (p. 1, m. 6), granting to them the said annuities, having been surrendered.

- An order under the Privy Seal of Henry VII. in 1485 to the Treasurer and Chamberlaine of his Exchequer orders them to allow to his "beloved cousin John, arl of Oxenford," the sums of 100 marks and 100*£* out of his purchase—money of 800 marks for the manors of the late Wm. Alyngton during his son's minority, and the marriage of this son: This, because the Earl had paid 100 marks to Rich. Gardynere, alderman of London, "for so moche money by the said Richard Gardynere late lent unto Richard, duc of Gloucester, late, in dede and not of righte, kind of England, upon pledge of a salt of gold with a coverthe which salt was delivered unto the said Richard Gardynere by one, *William Daubeney, knight, keeper of the juelx with the foresaid pretended king.* and also the summe of c. *ýi.* parcell of xxiii^c. *ýi.* by the said late pretended king borrowed of the maire and aldermen of our said cite of London and for suertie and contentaciom of the said xxiii^c. *ýi.* the said late pretended king laide in plege to the said maire and aldermen a coronalle gold garnished with many other grete and riche juelx, as by a bille ended betwix the said maire and aldremen, on that one partie, and the foresaid William Daubeney, then keper of juelx of the said pretended king on that othre partie thero made, more plainly doth appere. (*Note: Memorials Illustrative of the Reign of Henry VII,* p. 214. (Rolls Series.))
- In Sept. 1484 we find the following orders: "Parcelles of clothing &c. to be delivered by the said bishop to the said erle of Desmond Item, a nother lettre direct to Mr. *William Dawbeney,* clerk of the kinges juelles, to delivere unto the said bisshop for the said erle of Dissemond, a coler of gold of xx^{ti} oz., xxx^{ti} *ýi.* Letters and Papers t. Rich. III. Hen. VI, ed. Gairdner, Rolls Series, 1861, p. 713.

There is no William Daubeney's will of Caxton's time at the Probate Office, but the following items culled from various sources appear to refer to Caxton's friend, and his family:

Dame Joan Dawbeney, wife of Sir Wm. Dawbeney, was buried at the Augustine Friars Church, Broadstreet Ward, London, [no date given]. (*Note: Stowe's Survey of London,* 1633, p. 186, col. 2.) John, son and heir of Sir Giles Dawbeney, is buried in the same church.

Sir Wm. Stanley, William Dawbeney late of London, gentleman, others were attainted of treason for rebelling against Henry VII. Act of Attainder in the *Rolls of Parliament*, vol. 6, p. 503.

Mr. Walter Rye says that this may be the same man as Sir William, because, in an official document like the above, the title of Knight conferred by the usurper, Rich. III, would probably not be acknowledged. (But compare the order under the Privy Seal in 1485, on the preceding page.)

Mr. Rye also thinks our Wm. D. was connected with the Norfolk Dawbeney. In Blomfield's *Norfolk*, Wm. Dawbeney, of North Burlingham, after 1428 bought a property which his grandson Thomas sold in 1528.

The Series of English Charlemagne Romances will be completed by the issue next year of the romances of *Roland and Vernagu* and *Sir Otuel*, from the Auchinleck MS., and the curious poem of *Rauf Coilear* from the unique printed copy.

SIDNEY J. HERRTAGE.

Mill Hill, N.W., October 1881.

The Lyf of the Noble and Crysten Prynce, Charles the Grete.

[CAXTON'S INTRODUCTION.]

Saynt Poul, doctour of veryte, sayth to vs that al thynges that ben reduced by wrytyng ben wryton to our doctryne, And Boece maketh mencion that the helthe of euery persone procedeth dyuercely. Thenne sythe it is soo that the cristen feyth is affermed and corrobered by the doctours of holy chyrche, Neuertheles the thynges passed dyuersley reduced to remembraunce engendre in vs correction of vnlaful lyf. For the werkes of the auncient and olde peple ben for to gyue to vs ensauple to lyue in good vertuous operacions digne worthy of helth, in folowyng the good and eschewyng the euyl. And also in recountyng of hye hystories(*Note: "hye hystories:" Fr. *histoires haultaines* .)*) the comune vnderstandyng is better content to the ymaginacion local than to symple auctoryte to which it is submysed(*Note: Fr. *lentement comun est mieulx content a retenir pour la ymaginacion locale, a la quelle il est subzmis* .)*). I saye this gladly(*Note: "gladly:" Fr. *volontiers* .)*) For oftymes I haue been excyted of the venerable man messire henry bolomyer, chanonne of lausanne, for to reduce for his playsyr somme hystories as wel in latyn in romaunce as in other facion wryton, that is to say of the ryght puyssaunt, vertuous, and noble charles the grete, kyng of fraunce and emperour of Rome, Sone of the grete Pepyn: And of his prynces barons, As Rolland, Olyuer, and other, touchyng somme werkes haultayne doon commysed by their grete strength ryght ardaunt courage, to the exaltacyon of the crysten fayth and to the confusyon of the hethen sarazyns and myscreaunts, whiche is a werk wel contemplatyf for to lyue wel. And bycause the sayd henry Bolomyer hath seen of thys mater and the hystories dysioyned wythoute ordre, therfore at his request, after the capacitye of my lytel entendement, And after thystories and mater that I haue founden, I haue ordeyned this book folowyng. And it myght soo haue ben that yf I had ben more largely enformed(*Note: Fr. *peult estre que je ieusse bien este informe* .)*) and al playn I had better made it, For I haue not sayd ony matere, but I haue therof ben enformed, Fyrst by an autentyke book named myrroure hystorial(*Note: See *Introduction* .)*) as by the canonnes and somme other bookes whiche make mencyon of the werke folowyng. And by cause I may haue a lytel parte of honourable fundament I shal touche of the first cristen kyng of fraunce. For the moste parte of this book is made to thonour of the frenssh men and for prouffyte of euery man, and after the desyre of the redar and herer there shalle be founden in the table all playne the mater of whyche the persone shal haue desyre to here or rede wythoute grete atendacyon, by the playsyr of god, to whome I submytte al myn entente to write no thyng that ought to be blamed ne but that it be to the helthe sauacion of euery persone.

Thenne for as moche I late had fynysshed in enprynte the book of the noble vycoryous kyng Arthur, fyrst of the thre moost noble worthy of crysten kynges, and also tofore had reduced into englysshe the noble hystorie lyf of Godefroy of boloyne kyng of Iherusalem(*Note: The "*Book of the noble Hystories of Kyng Arthur and of certeyn of his Knyghtes*, reduced into English by Syr Thomas Malory, Knyght, and by Mr. William Caxton, deuyded into xxi bookes, chapytred and emprynted in the abbey westmestre;" was printed also in 1485, folio. It is a book of the greatest rarity. There is a perfect copy in Earl Jersey's library, at Osterley Park, and an imperfect one, wanting four leaves, in the library of Earl Spencer. It was reprinted by Wynkyn de Worde in 1498, folio, and an unique copy of this reprint is also in Earl Spencer's library. "*The last Siege and Conqueste of Jherusalem*," which gives the account of Godfrey of Bullogne, appeared in 1481.) last of the said iij worthy, Somme persones of noble estate and degree haue desyred me to reduce thystorye and lyf of the noble and crysten prynce Charles the grete, kyng of fraunce(*Note: *Ed. frauce* .)*) emperour of Rome, the second of the thre worthy, to thende that thystories, actes, lyues may be had in our maternal tongue, lyke as they be in latyn or in frensshe. For the moost quantyte of the people vnderstonde not latyn ne frensshe here in this noble royame of england. And for to satisfye the desyre requeste of my good synguler lordes specyall maysters and frendes I haue enprysed and concluded in my self to reduce this sayd book in to our englysshe, as all alonge and playnely ye may rede, here, and see in thys book here folowyng, besechyng al them that shal fynde faute in the same to correcte and amende it, And also to pardone me of the rude symple reducyng. and though so be there be no gaye termes, ne subtyl ne newe eloquence, yet I hope*

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

that it shal be vnderstanden, to that entente I haue specyally reduced it after the symple connyng that god hath lente to me, wherof I humbly wyth al my herte thanke hym, also am bounden to praye for my fader and moders soules that in my youthe sette me to scole, by whyche, by the suffraunce of god, I gete my lyuyng I hope truly. And that I may so do contynue I byseche hym to graunte me of his grace, and so to labour and occupye my self vertuously that I may come out of dette dedely synne, that after this lyf I may come to hys blysse in heuen. AMEN.

Here begynnen the chapytres tytles of this book folowyng nombred for to fynde the more lyghtly the mater therin comprised.

Here begynneth the first book whyche conteyneth thre partyes by the chapytres folowyng declared.

- The fyrst partye of the fyrst book conteyneth v chapytres speketh of the begynnyng of fraunce and of kyng Cloys.
 - ◆ Of the kynges of fraunce paynims vnto kyng cloys the first crysten kyng: [capitulo primo]
 - ◆ How kyng cloys beyng a paynym had to wyf clotildis daughter of the kyng of bourgoyne meruayllously: [capitulo ij]
 - ◆ How the kyng was admonested of the quene clotildis affectuously that he shold byleue in the cristen fayth other maters: [ca. iij]
 - ◆ How kyng Clois was vycorious on his enemyes by—cause he byleued in Ihesu Cryst: [ca. iiij]
 - ◆ How the kyng was baptysed by saynt remyge, in his baptesme was brought by myracle the holy ampulle by an aungel fro heuen wyth whyche all kynges of fraunce ben enoynted at Raynes: [capitulo. v.]
- The second partye of the book conteyneth v chapytres speketh fyrst of kyng pepyn of Charlemayn hys sone.
 - ◆ How Pepyn by hys prudence was chosen kyng of fraunce whan the lygne of Cloys faylled in sucession: [capitulo primo]
 - ◆ Of kyng Charles whyche made many constytucyons wyth the pope Adryan and how he was made emperour of Rome: [ca. ij]
 - ◆ Of the corpulence of kyng cnarles and of the manere of his lyuyng: [capitulo iij]
 - ◆ To whome the kyng Charles his chylidren sones daughters were dedyed: [capitulo iiij]
 - ◆ Of the studye of kyng Charles, hys lyuyng and charytable werkes, and other maters: [ca. v]
- The thyrd partye of the fyrst book conteyneth iij chapytres, telleth how by deuyne reuelacyon Charles delyuerd the holy londe from the hondes of the hethen and myscreauntes, and conteyneth thre chapytres.
 - ◆ How the patryarcke of Iherusalem sente to charles that he shold gyue to hym socours after that he was caste oute by the turkes: [capitulo primo]
 - ◆ How Charles with a grete companye went for to conquere the holy londe other maters: [ca. ij]
 - ◆ Of the relyques whyche themperour Charles brought fro constantynoble fro the holy londe, of myraclis there doon: [ca. iij]

Here begynneth the ij book whyche conteyneth thre partyes by chapytres ensyewyng declared.

- The first partye of the second book conteyneth xvj chapytres and speketh of the bataylle bytwene Olyuer and Fyerabras, a meruayllous gyaunt.
 - How in a place named Mormyonde Charles ensyewed his warre ayenst the paynims, after a lytel of the prologe: [ca. primo]

Here begynnen the chapytres tytles of this book folowyng nombred for to fynde the more lyghtly the mater therin

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

- Of fyerabras how he came to exercyte charles: [capitulo ij]
- How Rychard of Normondye sayd to themperour what maner man was Fyerabras: [capitulo iij]
- The answer of Rolland to themperour ouer sodeynly: [ca. iiij]
- How kyng charles Rolland ben reprysed by thauctour excused somewhat vpon the debate aforsayd: [capitulo v]
- How Olyuer was dysposed to fight ayenst fyerabras notwythstondyng that he was hurt: [ca. vj]
- How Olyuer was requyred by hys fader that he shold not fyt with the geaunt, but for al that he went forth: [capitulo vij]
- How Olyuer spake fyrst to fyerabras, whych set no thyng by hym, with other desputacions. [viiij]
- How after many dysputacions olyuer ayded fyerabras to arme hym, and of the ix meruayllus swerdes, how Olyuer named hym self by his propre name: [ca. [supplied by editor] ix]
- How Olyuer fyerabras began to fyght, and of the prayer of Charles for Olyuer, and other maters: [capitulo x]
- How Olyuer made hys prayer to god whan he felte hym hurte: [Capitulo xj]
- How after a grete bataylle Olyuer gate the bame dranke at his ease, how he dyd whan his hors was slayn: [capitulo xij]
- How fyerabras olyuer fout togyder on fote meruayllously, the prayer that charles maad for Olyuer: [capitulo xiiij]
- How at this bataylle fyerabras was vaynquysshed by Olyuer after that he had recouerd one of the swerdes of Fyerabras. [ca. xiiij]
- How Fyerabras beyng vaynquysshed byleued in god, and how he was borne by Olyuer, how Olyuer was assayled of the sarasyns tormented: ca. xv
- How Olyuer was taken hys eyen blynfeld pyetously, whic coude not be socoured by the frensshe men: [capitulo xvj]
- The second partye of the ij book conteyneth xvij chapytres, speketh of the torment of the barons of fraunce how they that were not taken went for to speke to ballant thadmyral.
 - How fyerabras was founde by Charles and after baptysed heled of his woundes: [ca. j]
 - How Olyuer and hys felowes were presented to ballant thadmyral and cruelly passyoned by pryson: [capitulo ij]
 - Of the pryson where the frensshe men were lodged and how they were vysyted by fayr Florypes, doughter of thadmyral, of the beaulte of hyr: [capitulo(*Note: Ed. tapitulo.*) iij]
 - How the frensshe men were had oute of pryson and vysyted by the fayr floripes, of the beaute of hyr chambre: [capitulo iiij]
 - How kyng charles sent to ballant thadmyral vij peres of fraunce, whyche wold not gladly haue goon thyder: [capitulo v]
 - How thadmyral sent xv kynges sarasyns to charles to haue ageyn Fyerabras, the whyche were recounted by the peres of fraunce put to deth: [ca. vj]
 - Of the meruayllous brydge of mantryble, of the tribute that must be there payed for the passage, how with fayr wordes the frensshe men passed ouer. [ca. vij]
 - How the barons cam spake to thadmyral, and what message they made to hym: [capitulo viij]
 - How by the moyen of Floripes al the frensshemen were saued lodged to–gyder knowen by her, resonned of the reliques shewed to them, other maters: [capitulo ix]
 - How lucafer, neuewe of thadmyral, vyolently entred in to the chambre after was slayne by duc naymes in blowyng of the cole: [capitulo x]
 - How by the counceyl of floripes the frenssh men dyslodged thadmyral fro his paleys strongely by grete bataylle, how by enchaument a gyrdel was taken fro his doughter: [capitulo xj]
 - How the barons were assyged in that toure with floripes and her maydens whiche suffred grete hungre, how the goddes were by them confounded: [ca. xij]
 - How the peres of fraunce came oute of the toure, what grete batayll they made in which they mette recountred xx sommyers with vytaylle: [capitulo xiiij]

Here begynnen the chapytres tytles of this book folowyng nombred for to fynde the more lyghtly the mater ther

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

- How guy of burgoyne was taken with the sarasyns, beten vylaynously examyned of ballant thadmyral, the complayntes that floripes made for hym, other maters: [capitulo xiiij]
- How the paynems had purposed to haue hanged guy of burgoyne, seyng the crysten men, whyche socoured hym puysantly. [ca. xv]
- How the peres of fraunce tofore sayd were purueyed of vytayl, after restored, after assyeged, fout with the paynems [xvj]
- How the toure was brente a quarter fyl doun by enchauntment, how the frensshe men were in grete peryl of deth restored by assault that they made vpon the paynems: [capitulo xvij]
- Here begynneth the thyrd parte of the second book the which conteyneth xvj chapytres speketh how the barons of fraunce(*Note: Ed. frauce.*) made to them socours, and the paynems confused destroyed.
 - Of the mocyon of the peres of fraunce for to sende and sewe theyr affayres vnto kyng Charles, how rycharde of Normondye was ordeyned for to goo to hym: [capitulo primo]
 - How after that Rychard was departed the kyng claryon, the ryght puyssaunt kyng, rode after hym, the whiche was slayn by the sayd rycharde valyauntly, other maters: [capitulo ij]
 - How the hors of rycharde cam retorned thurgh thexcersyte of thadmyral was seen knowen of the peres of fraunce, in so moche that they supposed he had ben deed, how the brydge of mantryble was kept: [ca. iij]
 - How rycharde of Normandye passed the ryuer of flagot by myracle by the meane of a whyte herte: [capitulo iiij]
 - How Charles was in purposos for to haue retorned wythoute goyng ony ferther, by the counceyl of the traytre ganellon other his felowes: [ca. v]
 - How after the complaynte of Charles rycharde of normandye came to hym, which recounted the grete necessytees of the peres of fraunce in what fere they were in: [capitulo vj]
 - How by the moyen counceyl of rycharde of Normandye with iij other barons the stronge brydge of mantryble was wonne, not wythoute payne, what manere man was galafre: [ca. vij]
 - How by force of mortalyte of batayll Charles entred into mantryble after that Galafre was deed, not-with-stondyng that alorge the traytre was contrarye to hym, many other maters. [ca. viij]
 - How amyot the geantesse wyth an huge grete sythe dyd gretely hyr deuoyr ayenst the cristen men, how hyr ij sones were baptysed, of ballant thadmyral whan he knewe the tydynges: [ca. ix]
 - How the peres of fraunce were assayled more strongly than euer they were, and how the toure was quasi smytyn doun to the erthe after recomforted by the holy relyques by them adoured, and other maters: [capitulo x]
 - How the frenssh men in the toure had tydynges of the hoost of Charles thadmyral also, and how Ganellon bare hym meruaylously whan he was sent forth allone what he dyd: [ca. xj]
 - How charles themperour ordeyned x bataylles, how they recounted the bataylles of puyssaunce of Ballant thadmyral, where as themperour dyd meruaylles, other maters: [ca. xij]
 - How in this bataylle folowyng Sortybrant the kyng was slayn by Reyner fader of Olyuer, and how afterward thadmyral dyd meruaylles and grete ennoye to the frensshe men: [capitulo xiiij]
 - How the peres of fraunce that were in the toure cam oute whan they sawe thoost of Charles, how thadmyral was taken and holden prysoner: [ca. xiiij]
 - How ballant thadmyral for all the admonycion that was made to hym he wold not be baptysed but was slayn, Floripes hys doughter was baptysed after wedded to guy of burgoyne, guy crowned kyng she quene of that contre: [capitulo xv]
 - How Florypes gaf the relyques to themperour, how they were assayed proued by myracle, of the retournyng of charles the ende of this book: [ca. xvj]

Here begynneth the iij book whiche conteyneth ij partyes by the chapytres folowyng declared.

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

- The first partye of the iij book conteyneth xiiij chapytres speketh of the warres in spayne of two grete geantes.
 - ◆ How saynt Iames appyered to Charles, how by the moyen by the conduyte of the sterres he went in to Galice, what citees he there subdued: [ca. primo]
 - ◆ Of cytees gotten in spayne by Charles, how somme of theym were by hym cursed: [capitulo ij]
 - ◆ Of a grete ydolle whyche was in a cyte that myght not be beten doun, and of the sygnes condycyons therof: [capitulo iij]
 - ◆ Of the chyrche of saynt Iames in Galyce, of other chyrches that he dyd there do founde: [ca. iiij]
 - ◆ How after that Aygolant the geaunt had taken spayne destroyed and put to deth the crysten men Charles recouerd it, other maters: [capitulo v]
 - ◆ How aygolant sent to Charles that he sold feably come to hym with lytel peple to make Iuste warre, how Charles in habyte dissimyled spake to hym, other maters: [capitulo vj]
 - ◆ How charles accompanied with moche peple returned to the place forsaid took the cite of agenne, other maters: [capitulo vij]
 - ◆ Of the vertuous operacions that charles dyd when he was returned in to fraunce, what barons he had in his companye, and of theyr puysaunce: [capitulo viij]
 - ◆ Of the tryewes of charles of aygolant of the deth of his peple, wherfore aygolant was not baptyseed: ca. ix Of the deth of aygolant of his peple, how moche people of the cristen men were dede by concupyscence of money, the crysten founden dede by myracle: ca. x Of ferragus the meruayllous geant, how he bare away the barons of fraunce with out daunger, how afterward rolland fout ayenst hym: [ca. xj]
 - ◆ How on the morne rolland and ferragus foughten to-gyder, and of their desputyng of their fayth, and by what meane Ferragus was slayn by rolland: [ca. xij]
 - ◆ How Charles went to cordube where as the kyng of that place of cibylle abode hym, of their destructyon: [ca. xiiij]
 - ◆ How the chirche of saint James was halowed sacred by turpin tharchebisshop, thother chirches of spayne subgettes to the same, of y^e pryncypal chyrches: [ca. xiiij]
- The second partye of the iij book conteyneth x chapytres speketh of the trayson doon and made by Ganellon of the deth of the peres of fraunce.
 - ◆ How the trayson was comprysed by Ganellon of the deth of the crysten men, how ganellon is repreued by thauctour: [ca. j]
 - ◆ Of the deth of kyng marsuryus, and how Rolland was hurte wyth foure speres mortally after that al his peple were slayn and deed: [capitulo ij]
 - ◆ How Rolland deyed moche holyly after many maters orysons made, and prayed to god moche deuoutely, and of the complaynte made vpon hys swerde durandal: [capitulo iij]
 - ◆ Of the vysion of the deth of rolland shewed to tharchebyssshop Turpyn, of the sorowe of charles, how he complayned hym pyteously, other maters. [iij]
 - ◆ How olyuer was founden slayn, and of the deth of the sarasyns, of the deth of ganellon whyche was hydous: [capitulo v]
 - ◆ How after the thynges aforesayd Charles gaf thankynges and preysynges to god and to Saynt Denys: And of the constitucions that he made in fraunce: [capitulo vj]
 - ◆ How Charles wente into Almayn where as he deyed holyly, and of his deth shewed to tharchebyssshop Turpyn, and of his buryeng Imperyally: [ca. vij]
 - ◆ Of the recapitulacion of al this werke, and of hys deth at acon, of his sepulture: [capitulo viij]
 - ◆ Thexcusacyon of thauctour. [ca. ix]
 - ◆ Thenuoye of thauctour: [ca. x]

Explicit

[Book I]

[Part i]

**[Of the kynges of fraunce paynyms vnto kyng' cloys the first cristen kyng:
capitulo primo]**

As it is redde in thystories of the troians After the destructyon of the noble cyte of Troye there was a kyng moche noble named francus, the whyche was felowe of Eneas, which, whan he departed fro Troye came in to the regyon of fraunce began to regne in grete prosperyte: for the felycyte of his name he dyd compose do edyfye a cyte whiche he named fraunce, so folowyng all the regyon was called fraunce: after, whan fraunce was enhauced reduced to mageste ryal Priamus was the fyrst that regned vpon the frensshe men v yere. The second was marcurius xxxiiij yere; The iij pharamundus regned xj yere; The iiij clodyus xiiij yere; The v Meroneus x yere; The vj hildericus xxvij. yere, the vij was Clodoneus, the fyrst crysten kyng whyche regned vpon the frensshe men after thyncarnacion of our lord ccclxxxiiij yere, of whome I entende to make a litel mencyon vpon hys merueyllous conuersacyon.

**How the kyng clodoneus paynym had' to wyf the noble daughter of the
kyng of burgoyne: capitulo ij**

In that tyme was kyng of the burgoybons guldengus, the whiche had iiij sones al of good aeye, that is to wete, Agabondus, the ij godogesylus, the iij. Hyspericus, the fourth Godamarus. The fyrst agabondus replenysshed of al inyquyte put to deth by swerd his broder hispericus and after henge his wyf, put a stone aboute hyr necke drowned hyr. This hispericus had two fayre doughters, the eldest was named throne whom agabondus her vncler bannysshed fro hys contrey sent hir forth in habyte dyssymled. The yonger of these ij douters was named clotildis, whom he retyened for hir beaute wyth hym in his hous. duryng thys the kyng clodoneus, or Cloys in frensshe, beyng a paynym whyche byleued with his subgettes but vpon ydolles, oftymes for hys affayres sent his messagers in to burgoyne. clotildys this fayr mayde was ofte seen of the messagers of the kyng Cloys by holden affectuously, and for hir grete beaute dyscrecyon the sayd messagers notyfyed it to the kyng cloys, and whan thys kyng Cloys was ynough informed of the grete beaute wysdom of this mayde, whyche was crysten, he was moche curyous to sende his herawdes vnto agabondus vncler of thys doughter for to haue hyr to maryage. Duryng those dayes the kyng Cloys had a subtil man wyth hym named aurelyanus, which by comaundement of hys lord wente to the place where as was thys mayde put hym self in habyte moche poure and dyssymled, left his good habytes with his felowes in a wode went moche holyly tofore the moder chyrche of that place the day of a grete feste, set hym self in the myddes of the poure peple for to receyue almesse lyke as other dyden. whan thoffyce was accomplysshed this mayde Clotildis, like as se was accustomed, atte departyng fro the chyrche began to gyue almesse to the poure peple, whan she came to Aurelianus she gaf to hym in his honde a pyece of golde, anone he as glad wel contente kyssed hyr honde. whan this lady was in hyr chambre she began to thynke on that poure man that had kyssed hyr honde sent for to seche hym by hyr seruaunt. whan he wyst it he cam to hir moche Joyously and bare in his honde the ryng of kyng cloys humbly behaued hym tofore hyr. The mayde began to say to hym; "saye to me wherfore dyssymylest thou thy self lyke to the poure people." Aurelyanus answerd: "Madame, knowe ye for trouthe that I am a messenger of the noble kyng cloys kyng of Fraunce, whiche hath sente me to you, beyng enformed of your beaute wysdom desyreth you to be hys wyf for to be quene," forthwith he presented to hir the ryng of kyng cloys the whyche she took put it in to the tresour of agabondus hir vncler, sayd to the messenger that he shold recomaunde hyr to the kyng in tellyng to hym that it was not leeful to a paynym to haue to his wyf a crysten woman. Neuertheles se prayed hym that of al this he shold say noo worde, that she wold not doo but as the kyng wold. vpon this poynt aurelianus came and sewed al to the kyng, wherevpon the kyng cloys the yere folowyng sent ageyn his messenger aurelianus to agabondus vncler of Clotildis for to haue hyr to his wyf. whan Agabondus knewe thentencyon of kyng cloys he ansuerd to the messenger: "Say hardyly to the kyng thy lord that

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

he hath lytel to do in desyryng to haue my nyece to wyf:" but the bourgoynons wyse counseyllours, redoubtyng the pyussaunce of kyng Cloys, by good counceyl whan they had wel serched the tresour of Agabondus their kyng founde the ryng of kyng cloys which clotyldis had layed therin, wherin was grauen portrayed his ymage, wente concluded to performe the wylle of kyng clois: vpon this agabondus ful of yre delyuerd Clotildis to aurelianus he brout hir with his peple with grete Ioye to kyng cloys which had grete playsyr to see thys fayr mayde. And forthwyth with al solemnyte after the maner royal he espoused hir after the custome of his lawe.

How kyng' Cloys was admonested' by the quene clotildis affectuously that he shold' byleue in the crysten fayth, and' other maters: capitulo iij

The fyrst nyght after the espousaylles atte houre that the kyng and the quene sold slepe togyder, Clotyldis enbraced wyth the loue of god by grete knowlege of Ihesus our lord went and said to the kyng: "My right dere lord, I requyre the that it please the to graunte to me a lytel demaunde byfore or I entre in to thy bedde wyth the." The kyng sayd: "demaunde what thou wylt For I am welcontente." Clotyldys thenne sayd to hym: "Fyrst, I demaunde, requyre, and admoneste the that thou wylt byleue in god of heuen Fader almyghty, whyche made heuen and erthe that hath created the. And in Ihesu Cryst his glorious sone, kyng of alle kynges, which by his passyon hath redemed the. And in the holy ghoost, confirmatour and Illumynatour of al good werkes, procedyng fro the fader fro the sone, the foresayd Trynyte in one onely essence, to whome ought to be gyuenal honour and all lawde byleue. Byleue ye in this holy byleue and mageste and leue the ydolles made wyth mannes honde, a folysshe thyng and vayn, and thynke for to restore the holy chyrches whyche thou hast brente. Secondly, I requyre the that thou wylt demaunde my parte and porcyon of the goodes of my fader and of my moder of agabondus myn vncler whom he dyd put to deth falsely and wythoute occasyon, but the vengeaunce I leue to god." whan she had said this the kyng answerd: "Thou hast demaunded me a poynte passage which is to me ouer strait hard to graunte, that is that I sold forsake my goddes by whome I gouern me, for to adoure one onely god of whome thou hast spoken to me. demaunde of me som other thyng with good hert I sal doo it." Clotildis ansuerd: "as moche as is possyble to me to requyre I supplye byseche the that thou wilt adoure the god of heuen maker of al, to whome onely is due al honour." the kyng made none other ansuer but sente anone Aurelyen his factour to agabondus for to haue the goodes longyng to the quene Clotildis, whan Aurelyen had doon his message Agabondus, replenysshed with grete Ire, ansuerd to the messenger that he sold as soone haue alle his royaume as ony thyng of hym. For which cause Aurelyen said to hym: "the kyng cloys my maister comaundeth the by me that thou make an answer vpon my demaunde or ellys he shalle be euyl contente." Thenne the bourgoynons helden a counceyl and sayd to agabondus their kyng: "Sir kyng, gyue to your nyece of your goodes as reason wyl for it is ryght, And we knowe wel that so ought ye to doo and to take playsyr to haue good alyaunces with clois the kyng and wyth all the frensshe peple, to thende that they renne not on vs. For the people is boystous furious and, that werse is, wythout mynde of god"(*Note: "the people is boystous furious, &c.:" Fr. *celluy peuple est austere et furieux, et, que pis est, sans memoire de dieu.*)* And vpon this poynte Agabondus, constrayned to the counceyl of the bourgoynons hys people, sente a grete partye of his tresour to Aurelyen the messenger of kyng Cloys. In a litel tyme after the kyng cloys in vysityng his royaume The quene clotyldis was anon grete with chylde, and sone after was delyuerd of a sone whome se dyd do baptyse, And contynuelly requyred the kyng that he wold byleue as to-fore is sayd, but he in no wyse wold here her ne do thereafter. And whan the chylde was baptyesed anone it expyred dyed, wherof the kyng was euyl contente and sayd to the quene:

"yf thou haddest gyuen hym and dedyed ym to my goddes he were now alyue." The quene answerd: "for this thyng I am noo thyng perturbed in my courage, but I rendre gyue thankynges to god my creatour by cause he hath me so dygne and worthy that it hath plesed hym to take in to his royalme of heuen the fyrst fruyt of my wombe." After, the yere folowyng se had ageyn another sone named Iodomyrus, the whyche whan he was baptyesed bycame anone so seke that it was supposed he sold deye. And whan the kyng sawe it languysshe he beyng euyl contente said to the quene: "and now,"(*Note: Ed. how.*) sayd he, "it shal none otherwyse be of this chylde but as it was of that other his broder, by-cause ayenst myn entente thou doost thy wylle in baptyesing them." Thenne the quene for the fere of the kyng prayed to god deuoutely for the helthe of hyr chylde, And anone

How kyng' Cloys was admonested' by the quene clotildis affectuously that he shold' byleue in the crysten fayth.

he was guarlysshed and hool.(*Note: "guarlysshed and hool:" Fr. gary.*)

How the kyng' Cloys was vycoryous of hys enemyes by cause he byleued' in Ihesu Cryste: Capitulo iiij

Kyng Cloys after certeyn tyme began to make warre mortal ayenst the Almayns, And so perseueryng the allemayns had vycorye on the frensshe men in suche wyse that they were ouer–throwen slayn. Thenne whan aurelyen sawe the dystroctyon of the kynges peple he began to beholde the kyng hys lord sayd to hym: "Syr kyng, ye see tofore your eyen the mortal dystroctyon of your peple, I requyre you that ye byleue in god almyghty whyc hath made heuen erthe, I mene hym whome my lady the quene adoureth, precheth, and byleueth on." Whan the kyng had herde aurelyen thus speken in grete affectyon he began to lyfte his eyen vnto heuen and wepte moche largely, and wyth grete pyte thus sayd(*Note: "and wepte sayd:" Fr. plourer moult largement en grant pitie va dire, &c.*): "O Ihesu cryst, sone of the veray god almyghty, on whom my wyf by–leueth and wyth al hyr hert precheth notyfyeth hym to gyue remedye to them that ben in trybulacyons, I byseche the of ayde and socour that I may be vycoryous of myn enemyes by experyence presently. I byleue(*Note: Ed. byleueue.*) on the, and in thy name I salle baptyse me. I haue demaunded my goddes for to helpe me but they haue doon no thyng for me, And I say they be of noo value ne of noo comforte whan they may not helpe them that requyre them. Wherefore to the as veray god and lord I requyre the(*Note: Fr. Pour quoy toy comme vray dieu et seigneur ie te requiers, comme ie ne desire croire quen toy fermement: par ta haultaine puissance ie demande.*) that I may be delyuerd by thy hyc puyssaunce fro myn aduersaryes." he thus sayeng wyth an hyghe voys The allemayns his enemyes vanquysshed murdred began to flee in suche wyse that theyr kyng was deed, wherefore they that abode yelded them to kyng cloys and bycamen his subgettes and sette al that contreye vnder hys obayssaunce puyssaunce payeng yerely trybute. Thenne after this vycory by the puyssaunce of god obteyned he came in to fraunce And recounted alle to the quene hys wyf, how by Inuocacion dyuyne and by thayde of god almyghty he had obteyned vycorye.

How the kyng' was baptyssed' by saynt Remyge, in hys baptesme by myracle was brout the holy ampulle by an aungel fro heuen wherof euer after all the kynges of Fraunce been enoynted' in their conse–cracyon atte cyte of Raynes: capitulo v.

After that the quene had herde the kyng whyche was conuerted vnto the crysten fayth for the vycorye which he had obteyned se had grete Ioye And Incontynent sent after saynt Remyge bysshop of raynes, a moche holy man, whiche came to hyr for to preche to the kyng his saluacyon the manere of the crysten fayth. whan he was comen, after that he had wel enformed the kyng, began strongly to excyte the peple of fraunce to byleue in Ihesu Cryst, And the peple gaynsayed it not. For in knowyng the errour of thydolles they began al to byleue in god say: "Syr kyng glorious, it is best that ye forsake thydolles and adoure the god Inmortal whome the quene adoureth and preyseth so for to do all we be contente." Incontynent al this was sewed to saynt Remyge, wherof e was moche Ioyous, and cam to them dylygently as a good herdman that taketh grete payne to kepe the seep fro his aduersarye; and grete playsyr ought he to haue to come thyder, For his comyng and hys prechyng dyd soo grete prouffyte that it made the peple to be regenerate after thordynaunce of holy baptesme, wythoute which no man may entre in to heuen. wherefore the necessaryte of the saluacion of thys kyng enlumyned of grace, dysposed to byleue, conioyned to good entencyon maad affectuously saynt Remyge to come, for he thought wel whan the kyng was baptyssed and byleued in Ihesu cryst and his commaundements that al the peple subgette to hym shold do the same wyse. And whan saynt remyge was comen and had commyned with the kyng touchyng his saluacyon he(*Note: he: the pronoun is unnecessarily inserted here: throughout the book the subject is constantly omitted in secondary clauses, where the person or thing spoken of is the same as in the principal sentence. See Sege off Melayne, l. 27, and note.*) began to ordeyne the place for to baptyse ym honourably, and dyd do(*Note: Ed. to.*) paynte the hystories after somme poyntes of our crysten fayth moche rychely and repayed the places ryght delycyously. And on that other he dyd do ordeyne founde chirches autentykly(*Note: "autentykly:" Fr.*

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

auctentiquement.), compose baptyzatoryes frentes(*Note: "frentes:"* clearly an error for "fontes:" the Fr. reads, *composer baptitoires couenablement.*) conuenably. whan al this was done (*Note: The words between the asterisks are repeated in the original with slight alterations, as follow: And thenne the kyng was al redy to receyue the holy sacrament of baptesme [printed taptisme], To whom Saynt Remyge began by fayr manere: "Syr Kyng, it is tyme that e ought of pure Intencion to forsake the goddes to whome here afore tyme e haue byleued on.")y^e kyng was al redy to receyue the holy sacrament of baptesme, to whome the frende of god saynt remyge began to say by faconde manere. "Syr kyng, it is tyme that ye ought wyth pure entencyon to forsake the false goddes to whome tofore this tyme ye haue gyuen fayth,* whyche ben ful of al vanye and do no thyng but excersite of dampnacyon. And ye ought to byleue wyth ryt humble hert in one onely god almyghty, the fader, the sone, the holy ghoost, one onely pure essence, whyche hath created heuen and erthe, to whome one onely out to gyue fayth and creauce: and in Ihesu cryst his sone, whyche for the sauacyon of humayn creature wold take humanye couenable for to repayre thynobedyence of our fyrst fader Adam. And that was conceyued in the bely of the Virgyn marie by the werk of the holy ghoost: whyche after was sette on the crosse and took deth dolorously for to redeme vs, was buryed and roos fro deth to lyf, and after ascended in to heuen, and sytteth vpon the ryght honde of the fader, and fro thens shal come and Iudge the lyuyng and deed. Also ye sal byleue in holy chyrche, our catholyque moder, her ordonnayre." and whan saynt Remyge had ynough enformed the kyng and the peple of our fayth and byleue he baptyised them in the name of the fader of the sone of the holy ghoost. And whan he came to enoyntyng after the custome of the holy cresse whyche noo man brought, Incontyent by the plesyr of god and demonstraunce myraculous, they alle stondyng,(*Note: Ed. stondyug'.*) sodeynlye came down descendyng fro heuen a douue synyng, whyche bare in hyr becke an holy ampull and lefte it in the same place where the holy cresse was, wherwyth the kyng cloys was fyrst enoynted in grete deuocyon by Saynt Remyge; whyche Ampull is presently at Raynes, of whyche holy cresse that is therin the kynges of fraunce onelye been enoynted ones in theyr consecracyon. In that tyme were baptyised the systers of the sayd kyng and thre thousand men of hys excersyte, and so after all the peple of fraunce in grete Ioye and exaltacion of glorye.*

The second' partye of the first book conteyneth fyue chapytres, and' speketh of the begynnyng' of kyng' Pepyn And' Charlemayn hys sone.

How Pepyn by his prudence was chosen kyng' of Fraunce when the lygnage of kyng cloys faylled' in successyon: ca. j

The book precedent maketh mencyon of kyng Cloys the fyrst crysten kynge of the lordes of Fraunce of whome the lygnage succeeded from heyre to heyres vnto the foure and twenty kyng, whych was the kyng Pepyn of another lygnage. And the Kyng whyche was the xxij after the kyng Cloys and of his lignage was named hildricus, the which kyng deuoute contemplatyf wythoute cure to excersyse thoffyce royal of a kynge put hym self in relygyon for to lede a solytarye lyf.(*Note: "put hym self in relygyon:"* that is, became a recluse, devoted himself to religion: Fr. se mist en religion.) In that tyme was Pepyn moche valyaunt of hys persone and moche noble prynce. And by cause that alle the kynges of fraunce haue succeeded of thys sayd Pepyn, and in especial charlemayn his sone vpon whome this werke is comprysed, I wyl here begynne to treate the mater the whyche I entende superfycially to speke of, And lyke as the book whyche is called myrrour hystoryal compryseth. That Pepyn the prynce on a tyme sente hys messagers to Rome to the Pope Zacharye for to haue answer vpon a demaunde, That is to wete, "whether is he more worthy to be a kyng or to be said a kyng wiche for pees and parfyght vnyon taketh on hym grete payne trauaylle, or ellys he that retcheth of noo thyng and is abandonned and gyuen to all slouth and is onely contente to haue the name onely of kyng?" Whan the pope had herde thys demaunde he remaunded to Pepyn that he by ryght reason and veray equitye ought to be called a kyng that gouerneth and ruleth hys fayt for the comyn wele contynueth it. For whyche ansuer demaunde the Frensshe men by counceyl(*Note: Ed. ceunceyl.*) approued consydered theyr kyng hyldrycus professed in a monasterye in lyf solytarye and contemplatyf, (And that not wythstondyng ought not to be ony thyng ayenst them that lyuen solytaryly,) how wel a kyng ought not to be solytarye, For suche as is the Kyng suche is the Royame. For salamon sayth, yf the kyng be neclygent the peple wote not what to doo, And blessyd is the londe that hath a prynce noble. Alle the frensshe men beyng wel

The second' partye of the first book conteyneth fyue chapytres, and' speketh of the begynnyng' of kyng' Pepyn

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

enformed of the condicions apperteynyng to a kynge after an auctour that sayth thus: "The Prynce whan he is ordeyned ought not to haue horses superfluous ne make his peple more subgette than they ought to be, and ought not to take but seruauntes propyre(*Note: Ed. propyce.*)and necessarye wythoute superfluyte, and not to nourysse ouer many houndes ne other beestes vnprouffitable but take them in mesure. And he sold eschewe multiplycacyon of mynstrellys, Tabouryns, commyn wymmen, lecherous men. And he sold not corrupte hys subgettes by euyl exauple. He sold not breke hys espousaylles, he sold gladly rede in bookes sold haue by hym peple wel letterd, And shold Iuge wythoute fauour. And tofore al thynges he sold adoure serue god: he sold not gladly take yeftes, ought not gladly to chaunge hys offycers." Alle thys thyng wel seen emonge them for the conseruacion of the people emonge the myscreauntes which were at that tyme, they wente and chosen for to be kyng of Fraunce the noble Pepyn, and fro that tyme forthon the lygnage of kyng cloys regned nomore vpon the frensshe men. And he was consecrate by saynt Boniface, And by thauctoryte apostolyque by Saynt Stephen Pope with his ij sones Charlemayn charles(*Note: Ed. repeats and charles.*)the grete was confermed and approued and ordeyned all the kynges of fraunce in grete benedycion to succede fro lygnage to lygnage moost nexte. And the said pope gaf is maledycion to al them that were opposaunts and ayenst these thynges aforesayd. Thenne after this noble kyng Pepyn made grete warre to the englysshe men. And after the guyse Romayn he ordeyned the seruyce in the chyrches of fraunce and many other maters meruayllous wherof thonour is attri—buted by good ryght to hym by vycorye obteyned, and was buried in the chyrche of Saynt Denys in Fraunce. And lefte hys heyres hys two sones afore sayd whome he had gotten on the noble quene berte, doughter of the grete Herclyn Cezar, of whome the lignage of romayns of germayns and of the grekes haue had concurrence. wherfore by good ryght in tyme folowyng the kyng Charles was chosen and maad Emperour of Rome. And the sayd kynge Pepyn regned xvij yere in prosperyte dygne of saluacyon, and after that the broder of the sayd Charles had regned in his partye of the royaume ij yere he deyed, And thenne after alle the gouvernement hoolly of the royaume of fraunce abode to the sayd charles as here—after salle be more playnly sewed.

Of kyng Charles after that he had' maad' many constytucyons wyth the Pope Adryan, how he was emperour of Rome: capitulo ij

This noble Charlemayn, otherwyse called Charles the grete, the whiche for the gretenes of hys body, puyssaunce, and operacions virtuouses by merite is called grete as I haue sayd, whyche after the deth of hys brother was(*Note: Ed. he was.*) onely kyng of Fraunce. A lytel whyle after that the Pope adryan regned dyd grete dyligence to strengthe corobere the crysten fayth in annulling the heresydes and constytutyng ymages for representacyon of sayntes in chyrches. And to many other labours merytoryes adioyned in the seruyce of god of holy chyrche The kyng charles ayenst the myscreauntes taryed not to confounde them but had vycorye of them in dyuers(*Note: Ed. dyners.*) maners, the pope adryan, whyche was wel enformed that thys Charles was a stronge pyler of the chyrche and protectour of the fayth, sente for hym that he sold come to Rome. And whan he came to pauye there he taryed sette hys syege and soiourned a lytel tyme, And after wyth a fewe of hys people departed came to rome. And there he was receyued affectuously and vysyted many places deuoutelye. And after whan he retorned he took pauye, And whan he had all doon his playsyr he retorned to Rome. And wyth the Pope adryan he assembled many bysshoppes and abbottes to the nombre of an hondred liij where they ordeyned many constytucyons vpon the fayt of the vnyuersal chyrche. And in that synode for the grete holynes of charles The pope and al thassystentes gaf hym power for to ordeyne bisshoppes archebisshops in al his contrees and prouynces. And al them that so sal be ordeyned he shal conferme and the rebellys that sall gaynsaye them he sal curse and theyr goodes be confysked. This noble charles wyth hys two sones, that one named Pepyn that other lowys, And the xij pyeres of fraunce, whyche al had promysed fydelyte one to that other for to leoparde theyr lyf for the crysten fayth. In that tyme many mortal warres duryng the lyf of kyng Pepyn of charles and after that the royaume of lombardye was destroyed and delyuerd of the myscreauntes, And maad pees not wythoute grete trauayll for to come from fraunce in to lombardye by cause of the daungerous countre. whan alle thys was termyned to hys playsyr he reduced alle ytalye vnder the trybute of the royaume of Fraunce. In suche wyse that whan ytalye was thus destroyed he went to Rome for to gyue thankynges and laude to god moche deuoutelye for vycorye that he had and for excusyon doon vpon the enemyes of the fayth. And there with the pope Adryan he

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

maad many constytucyons whyche by ryt equitye ought wel to be obserued. And after he beyng thus in Rome vitoryous hys sone Pepyn was ordeyned consecrate kyng of the ytalyens, And hys sone lowys was ordeyned and consecrate kyng vpon guyan. thys doon the Romayns whyche of grete ancyante were of grete apporte after that the emperour was by them put to deth Constantyn his sone wold haue regned for themperour, whyche was not wel in the faouour of the senatours and other Romayns; the whyche beyng in this poynte, after that they had taken delyberacyon of grete counceyl, seeyng the grete valure and noblesse of kyng Charles, whyche was so parfycht in alle noblesse hardynesse, prudence, other vertnes as I salle touche hereafter alle playne, that by consente of eueryche he was chosen emperour of Rome wyth grete loange exaltacyon of Ioye Innumerable, And by the honde of Pope Leo he was crowned emperour with alle honoures that myght be comprysed. And al wyth one voys gaf to hym laude and honour, And called hym Cezar August by a symylytude of valure in contemplacyon of grete playsyr that they had maad hym kyng of ytalyens.

Of the corpulence of kynge Charles, and' of the maner of hys lyung': capitulo iij

Charlemayn Kynge of Fraunce after that he was Emperour he dyd many meruayllous werkes and regned emperour thyrteene yere, And had thenne regned vpon the frensshe men xxxiiij yere. And in the contrye (*Note: "contrye:" Fr. pais.*) of Rome he edyfyed many cytees and restored good townes many other thynges whyche may not well be recounted by cause of his merueyllous werkes. Neuertheles for to knowe what man he was his werkes wytnessen: as moche as toucheth thexcercyte of hys persone Turpyn the holy man archebyssshop of Raynes which lyued that tyme and was oft tymes in the companye of kyng Charles sayth that he was a man wel faryng of hys body grete of persone and had hys syght and regarde fyers malcyous. The lengthe of hys persone conteyned eyght feet after the mesure of his feet, which were merueyllously long; fatte, and massyf was he of his soldres and raynes wythoute hauyng the bely otherwise than wel a poynte. (*Note: "wel a poynte:" Fr. bien a pointe.*) The armes and thyes he had ample and large: he was a subtil knyght ryght wyse actyf and moche fyers, and of alle hys membres he was of ryght grete strengthe. he had the face deduyte in lengthe and hys berde was a foot longe: he had hys nose reysed vpon a roundnes: A fayr regarde and countenance had thys man: he had the face of a large fote brode; he had the eyen like a lyon sparklyng lyke a cole by furyous regarde, his wynbrowes grete. Assone as he byhelde a man in angre eche man had of hym fere and drede in openyng his eyen. The gyrdle of whyche he was gyrde was viij fote longe wyth—oute that that henge down fro the bokle to the pendaunt. whan he took hys repaast he was contente wyth lytel brede, but as touchyng the pytaunce (*Note: "as touchyng the pytaunce:" as regards his share at dinner: Fr. quant a la pitance.*) he ete at his repaast a quarter of moton, or ij hennes, or a grete ghoos, or a grete pestel of porke, or a pecok, or a crane, or an hare all hool: he dranke wyn sobrelly wyth a lytel water therin. Of hys strengthe is not a lytel thyng to speke of, For he wold smyte a knyght armed wyth one stroke of a swerde and cleue hym from the coppe of the hede down to the sadel. And yf he had bytwene hys handes iij hors soen (*Note: "iij hors shoen:" the Fr. original adds, venans de la forge.*) wyth oute ouermoche prouyng hys myght he wold ryt them oute and breke them in pyeces. And more ouer wyth one hande he wold take a knyght al armed and lyfte hym vp to the heyght of hys breste lyghtly. And he had in hym thre thynges moche honourable: Fyrst, in yeftes yeuyng he was ryght large, lyke vnto Tytus themperour sone of Vaspasianus, which was so prodygal that it was not possyble to hym to gyue that whyche he promysed. And whan it was demaunded why he promysed thyng that he myght not gyue, forthwyth he answerd that a persone ought not departe fro a prynce desolate ne heuy, nor with—oute to obteyne somme thyng. Secondly, Charles was so sure in Iugement that no man coude reprehende hym, and also he was pyetous mercyful vnto cristen men after the qualyte of the persone the occasyon of the trespaas. And, thyrddy, in his wordes he was moche wel aduysed: whan he spake he thought strongely on that he sayd whan one spake to hym he remembered the manere for to compryse thentencyon of the spekar.

To what thynges kyng Charles hys sone and hys doughters were Instructe and' taughte to doo: capitulo iiiij

Dame bertrode moder of Charles ful of grete seyence in grete prosperyte of lyf and in honour wexed olde and fynysshed hyr dayes, and ordeyned bookes for to excersyse the artes lyberalle. Of whome fyrst charles took gladly payne for to estudye, And in the tyme of Infancye he maad scyence to be taught to hys sones and doughters, and after whan they knewe their byleue he made them to studye in the seuen artes lyberal. And whan the sones were of age for to ryde on horsback after the guyse of Fraunce he made them to bere armes and to Iuste for textcersyse the warre whan it sold be nede, and whan they dyd not that he made them to hunte al maner wylde beestes and dyd them to do other esbatements longyng to chualry contynuelly. After this he made his doughters to spyne sowe and to occupye them in other honourable werkes to thende that by ydlenes and slouthe faute of occupacyon they sold not haue occasyon to falle in thout dysordynate for to haue Inclynacyon to synne and vyce. and whan he was not occupied in maters of charge and weyghty he wold employe his tyme in wrytyng somme newe thynges to thende that he wold not be ydle, accordyng to the pystle of saynt poule, whiche admonesteth vs to do alwaye somme good, by cause þat our enemye the fende holde vs not in ydlenes for to folowe his entencyon dampnable. And he dyd do make in his palays in Acon in Almayn a chyrche of our lady comprysed of meruayllous beaute moche rychely ordeyned, and wrought, and in grete honour enhaunced in sygne of a parfyght crysten man. For after that one loueth the lord and that is gyuen to hym(*Note: "to hym:" we should here insert "he doeth," according to the reading of the French original, on fait.*) the werkes desirous to meue other to doo to the lord lyke as hym self and in lyke wyse sold perseuere in the amplyfycacyon of hys contreye that sythe the deth of hys fader Pepyn he doubled by puyssaunce in the royaume of fraunce.

Of the studye of kyng Charles, of hys lyuyng', of hys charytable werkes, and' other maters: capitulo v.

After that Charles was Instructe in gramayre other scyences morall speculatyf, alwaye he contynued in them: And by ardaunt desyre frequented(*Note: "frequented:" constantly studied: Fr. *frequentoit.**) the bookes composed vpon the crysten fayth for to be protectour and defendour of the chyrche, the whyche he vysyted on mornynges and on euenes in the nyght oftymes. and at good festes he faylled not to doo gretely hys deuoyr in sacrificyses oblacions: And also gaf largely almesse for the loue of god, and was alwaye redy to socour the poure people in the largest wyse. For he socoured not onely the poure folke of his owne contreye with his hauoyr goodes but in many other places beyonde the see he sente golde syluer and vytayll after the necessaryte of the place: as in surrye, in egypt, in affrique, in Iherusalem, other contreyes: as he that sayd: "gold and syluer is not myn." To euery man he desyred amytye and pees. Of body he was moche ample boystous(*Note: "moche ample boystous:" Fr. *moult ample et robuste.**) of stature well apparysaunt, the coppe of hys heed rounde, the heeres in grete reuerence, the vysage Ioyous. he had the voys clere of grete force, at his souper he ete not for the moost parte sauf rosted veneson,(*Note: "he ete not for the moost parte, &c.:" Fr. *ne mengoit pour le plus que de quatre metz, si non de la venoison rostie.**) whyche aboute alle other flesshe he loued and vsed at his souper. Alwaye he loued redars for to rede cronycles or other thynges contemplatyues, as he that wold as wel fede the soule whyche is perpetuel of spyrituel fode, for to mayntene it in vnyon of grace toward god his maker, as of refeccyon of the body for to conserue the lyf, And emonge al other bookes he delytet strongely in the bookes of saint austyn, especyally in that whyche is named de ciuitate dei. he dranke not ouer ofte, For at souper he dranke not but thre tymes. In somer tyme gladly after mydday he wold ete a lytel fruyt drynke ones wold goo reste hym al naked in his bedde two or thre houres. In the nyght he brake his slepe foure or v tymes and walked in hys chambre. Thus Charles perseuerd(*Note: Ed. preseuerd.*) in felicyte ryal and emperyal, sente oueral thorough hys empyre hys messagers and grete counceyllours(*Note: Ed. counceyllours.*) for to vysyte hys prouynces and good townes, for to be enformed of the gouernours of them for to do to eueriche Iustyce and reson; and made many constytucyons lawes accordyng to the places, and commaunded them to be obserued and kepte vpon grete payne. Semblably the sayd Charles sente thorough al the world for to knowe ouer al the gouernement, That is to wete, for to knowe the meruayllous faytes that were doon in the world, And also for to lerne the lyf of sayntes of whom the festes were halowed and made of

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

them bookes for tabyde in eternal memorye. euery day he dyd doo put in wrytyng that whyche he dyd, In suche maner that after the wrytyng that he thenne fonde Were founde more than thre hondred festes of sayntes one tyme of the yere, wherfor he excersycyng his spyrituel werkes he was byloued dere reputed of euery body. In that tyme Aaron the kyng of perce for the magnyfycence of charles sente to hym an Olyphaunt merueyllously grete for a synguler yefte and many other thynges precyouses. Thys Charles for hys grete holynesse and noblesse was in suche renomnee of honour and of vertues. On a tyme aaron the kyng of Perse sente to hym emonge other yeftes the bodyes of saynt Cypryan and of saynt speratus and the heed of saynt Panthaleon marters in to Fraunce.

The thyrd' parte of the fyrst book conteyneth thre chapytres, and' speketh how by reuelacion deuyne Charles delyuerd' the holy londe fro the honde of the paynys.

How the patryarke of Iherusalem sente to Charles for socours after that he was deiecte and' caste oute of the Turkes: capitulo primo.

It is redde that in the tyme that charles was emperour of rome the patryarke of Iherusalem was soo oppressyd of the paynys by mortall warre that vnnethe he myght saue hym self. And thus whan he knewe nomore what to do He had in remembraunce the noble charles and he beyng enformed of hys holynes, for socour he sente to ym the keyes of the holy sepulcre of our lord Ihesu Cryst of Caluarye and of the cyte, And wyth that he sente to hym the standart of the fayth as to the pyler of crystente and defendour of holy chyrche. After thys the patryarke came to constantynoble vnto themperour constantyn and to hys sone Leo brought wyth ym Iohan of naples preste and another whyche named hym self Dauyd archepreste, whome themperour Constantyn sent incontynent to charles, And wyth them tweyne he ordeyned for to goo wyth them two other whyce were named ysaac and Samuel, delyuerd to them a lettre wryton with his owne hande for to bere to charles. And the sayd Constantyn had wryton in one parte of the lettre thus: "On a nyght me semed that I sawe tofore my bedde a yonge woman moche fayre stondyng ryght vp, whyche touched me softly and sayd to me with swete wordes: 'Constantyn, whan thou knewest thaffayre doying of the paynys whyche holden the holy londe by grete affectyon, thou hast prayed god for to haue helpe. lo! what thou salte doo. Pourchace that thou mayst haue wyth the charles the grete kyng of the gallyens, whych is protectour of holy crystente and defendour of holy chyrche.' And after the same lady sewed me a knyght armed in al his body and spores on hys heles, had ys shelde rede, gyrde wyth hys swerde, had his sleue of purple, helde a spere moche grete, And the heed of yron wyche was on hys caste in to the ayer grete flambes of fyre: he helde in his honde a bacynnet al of golde synyng and he was auncient, wyth a longe berde, ryght fayre of vysage and longe of body: he had eyen synyng as ij sterres, and hys heerys began to wexe whyte, and after was wryton: 'O thou August that neuer refuseth the comandements of god, enioye the in Ihesu Cryst, in thy mynde alwaye yelde to hym thankynges: be enclosed in Iustyce(*Note: "be enclosed in Iustyce:" Fr. soies enclos en iustéce.)* lyke as thou hast be reclaimed in honour. Ihesu Cryste gyue the grace to perseuere(*Note: Ed. preseuere.*) and kepe alwaye the commandements, of god as thou oughtest to doo fermerly.'" And as it is wryton themperour Constantyn in hys tyme had deiected the paynys oute of Iherusalem seuen tymes, wherfore whan he myt nomore he sente his messagers to kyng Charles Whyche at that tyme was at parys. And whan the messagers had presented the letters and he had seen them he began to wepe moche greuously in contemplacyon of pyte of the holy sepulcre of our lord so holden of the paynys. After this he sente for tharchebysshop Turpyn and maad hym to preche openlye the pyteous tydynges whyche were thenne presentlye comen, the whyche wel herde and vnderstood the peple alle generally were enclyned to goo thyder

How Charles with a grete companye wente for to conquere the holy lande, and many other maters: capitulo ij

After that thys whyche I haue tofore sayd was publysshed The kynge dyd do make an edyct and dyd do crye it thorough out al the contreye, that euery man that myt bere armes sold be redy for to goo wyth hym ayenst the

The thyrd' parte of the fyrst book conteyneth thre chapytres, and' speketh how by reuelacion deuyne Charles d

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

paynmys, and he that wold not come sold be bounde for a good somme of money for to hyre souldyours that sold goo. Thys doon was neuer seen tofore in so lytel tyme so moche peple assembled as thenne were founden. And whan they were al departed in the name of god, full of one grete fayth in grete hope to obteyne vycторыe vnder the conduyte of Charlemayn capitayne of the fayth. And whan they had ryden a grete longe waye they came in to a grete wode of buscage in whyche they myght not passe vnnethe in two dayes, and yet wyth grete payne, and Charles thought to passe it in one daye(*Note: The original French runs: ilz se vont trouuer en vng grant bois quon ne pouoit passer a mains de deux iours encores a grant paine, et charles le pensoit passer en vng iour.* The meaning evidently is that the wood was so extensive that they could not pass through it in two days, and even then with great difficulty.): wherfore he his hoost entred wythin the sayd wood which was ful of dyuers wilde beestes, as Gryffons, beres, lyons, Tygres, and other beestes. whan they were thus in that grete wode and the nyght came on they were al abashed troubled wythout knowyng whych waye they sold holde, And Charles commaunded that they sold loke yf they myght see or knowe ony habytacyon, but they were ferre fro ony and oute of their ryght waye, and by force were dryuen to dyspose them to slepe in that estate. And whan they were al in reste the kyng charles beyng in his dormytorye, trustyng of the ayde of our lord in grete deuocyon began to say the psalter, And whan he came to the poynte that he sold say the vers folowyng "*Deduc me domine in semita mandatorum tuorum, quia ipsam volui,*"(*Note: Psalm cxix. 35.*) he sayeng thys there came a byrde to his ere in the presence of eueriche that were about hym whyche sayd wyth an hye voys: "kyng, thyn oryson is herde." Thenne alle they that were presente were moche troubled. and notwythstondyng al thys the kyng contynued to say the psalter vnto "*Educ me de custodia animam meam,*" all thus whyle he sayd the byrd began more strongely to crye and say "O frensshe man, what sayest thou? O frensshe man, what sayest thou?" And after that the Kyng and hys companye wente and folowed the byrde whyche conduyted them vnto the ryght waye whyche they had lost the day tofore, somme of the pylgryms sayd that after in the same contreye were suche byrdes so doyng.(*Note: "after in the same contreye, &c.:" Fr. depuis sont veus ces oyceaulx.*) But whan charles hys grete puysaunce were nyghe theyr enemyes they were moche troubled of theyr comyng the crysten lordes were gretely reioysed of theyr comyng. For wythoute cessyng he rested not tyl that he had recouerd the contreye of crysten men and expelled alle the paynmys whyche moche redounded to hym grete honour vycторыe. And in retournyng he demaunded of themperour of Constantynoble(*Note: In the original, Constantynople.*) lycence to departe of the other patryarkes archepreestes. And themperour helde hym an hole day, And for remuneracyon the sayd emperour for thonour of kyng charles on the morne tofore the yates of the cyte dyd do ordeyne many bestes of dyuers maners dyuers colours, grete quantyte of gold and syluer and of precious stones, to thende that he sold take it for somme rewarde for the grete good that he had doon in theyr contreye. But assone as charles knewe therof he took counceyll of hys people what he ought to doo in takyng of the precyous ryche yeftes or to retourne in to fraunce wythout takyng of ony thyng, And there vpon his barons counceilled hym that he shold take no thyng for hys laboure, For he had doon no thyng but for the loue of god onely: And he beyng wel content of thys ansuer commaunded that noo persone vpon grete payne sold take noo thyng of the Iewellys aforesayd.

Of the relyques that themperour charles brought fro constantynoble and' fro the holy londe, and' of the myracles that were doon: capitulo iij

Whan themperour of constantynople and the patryarke of Iherusalem knewe that charles wold take no thyng of the good aforesayd, he was admonested that he sold take somewhat of them, whan he was thus constrayned he bysought them that for the loue of god myght be gyuen vnto hym somewhat of the relyques of our lord and of hys holy passyon. Whan thys was demaunded It was commaunded to fast eury man thre dayes for to be the more enclyned to deuocyon and for to vysyte the holy reliques, and in especyall were ordeyned xij persones by grace whych sold treate see the relyques. Whan it came to the thyrd day the noble Charles by grete contrycyon confessyd hym to tharchebysshop Turpyn. After that moche reuerently they beganne to synge the letanye wyth somme psalmes of the psalter. And there was the prelate of naples named danyel, whyche in grete reuerence opened the coffre wherin was the precyous crowne of Ihesu Cryst and there sprange oute of the same so grete an odour that all they that were presente thought to be in paradys. Thenne charles ful of hool and very creauce of fayth kneled down to the grounde and stratched hym on therthe, moche strongely prayed our lord that for the

Of the relyques that themperour charles brought fro constantynoble and' fro the holy londe, and' of the myracle

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

glorye of hys name presently wold renewe the myracles of hys holy passyon and glorious resurrexyon. (*Note: Ed. rosurrexyon.*) assone as he had prayed in a moment the crowne began to florysshe, a meruayllous swete odour yssued out of the floures, soo ryt delycyous that eche man supposed that hys vestementes clothyng had comen oute of heuen. Thenne after thys daniel took a sharpe knyf kutting wel puryfyed to cutte the said crowne and in cutting alwaye more more the sayd crowne flourysshed and the odour smellyd the more habundantly. And of the floures charles put a parte in a reposytorye, and in a lytel coffre he put the thornes of the crowne, and wept so habundantlye that whan he wende to haue gyuen to tharchebysshop Ebroin the floures he wythdrewe hys honde supposed that the sayd Ebroin (*Note: Ed. Ebrom.*) had holden them in hys honde, they were in the ayer houyng by myracle abode there by themself the space of a grete houre. And after whan he had gyuen in keypyng the sayd thornes to the sayd Ebroin he sawe the coffret in thayer whyche was full of floures whyche abode there by them self, whiche sone after were conuerted in to manna and in that manere they ben at Saynt Denys in fraunce. And it hath be the oppynyon of many that thys was of the manna that god sente in to deserte to hys people. Thenne were there sewed myracles For al seek people that were there present were heled of al theyr maladyes by the odour of the floures aforesayd, and the peple that entred in to the chirche by grete vyolence of presse of peple cryed verytably that day was a day of helthe resurrection, for by the sauour of tho mellyfluous floures alle the cytee was puryfyed and replenysshed of grace: for thre hondred one seek man by compte were heled guarisshed of their maladyes. Emonge al other ther was one seek of xxiiij yere thre monethes, whyche was blynde, deaf, dombe, but at moment (*Note: Ed. meuyng; "moment."* The original reading is *au mouuement quon tira*. The French *mouuement* is evidently a mistake.) whan the thorne was drawn fro the crowne he took hys syght, and whan it was layed in ageyn he recouerd his heeryng, And in florysshing of it he was restored to his speche. After thys the sayd danyel took a nayll of which the precyous body of our lord in his passyon had be perced and in grete reuerence was put for a relyque in alabastre, in takyng oute of it a chylde was heled, whiche of hys lyfte syde was drye and Impotent fro his byrthe he ranne hastelye to the chyrche and cryed at the houre of none and said that he beyng in an extasye was heled and guarysshed and tolde the manere. Also there was gyuen to the kyng Charles a pyece of the holy crosse and the holy sudarye, and therwith the smocke of our lady the clothe wherin our lord was wrapped, and also the arme of saynt Symeon; and al reuerently in precyous pyxes caasses he henge them aboute hys necke. and in passyng by a castel there was a chylde newe dede whom kyng charles touched with the reliques that he bare anone the chylde was reysed to lyf. And whan he came to Acon in Almayne, whyche is a moche fayr cytee where as kyng charles had made his paleys moche fayr ryche and a ryght deuoute chapel in thonour of our lady, wherin hym self is buried. There atte laste were guarysshed heled blynde men and seek men of the feures wythoute nombre xij demonyaks, viij lazars of the palesey, xv of mysapen, xv crokebacked, lij of the fallyng sekenes, lxxv of the gowte, many of them of the same place many of other maladyes. And it was ordeyned that in the moneth of Iuyl at Acon in the cyte that al peple myght come see the forsayd relyques which kyng charles had brought fro Iherusalem and constantynoble (*Note: "And it was ordeyned, &c.:" Fr. il est ordonne que ou moys de iuing a ays la cite tous les ans on deust venir veoir, &c.*). And more ouer was establysshed that one day of the weke of the fastyng of ymbre dayes and in the moneth of Iuyl sold be made this demonstraunce and notyfycacyon. And in thys constytucion was Pope Leo Tharchebysshop Turpyn Achylleus bysshop of alexandrye And Theophyle of anthyocke many other bisshoppes abbottes, whyche werk was moche vertuous ful of helthe.

Here begynneth the ij book of thys present werke, whyche conteyneth thre partyes by chapytres folowyng' declared'.

The fyrst partye of the second book conteyneth xvj chapytres and' speketh of the batayll doon by Olyuer Fyerabras a meruayllous geaunte.

How in a place which was called' mormyonde charles abode folowyng' the warre ayenst the paynems, after a lytel prologue.

The fyrst chapytre.

I Haue spoken tofore in the fyrst book superfycyally of the first kyng of fraunce baptysed, in descendencyng after my purpoos vnto Kyng charles of whome may not wel be recounted the valyaunce of hym and of hys barons, which were named called pyeres of fraunce. Of whome of their behauyng I sal make mencion after that I sal mowe conceyue by trouthe,(*Note: "after that I sal mowe, &c.:" Fr. selon que ien pourray concepuoir.*)but thys that I haue tofore wryton I haue taken it oute of an autentyke book named "myrroure hystoryal" and in auncyent cronycles, And haue onely translated them oute of latyn in to frensshe. And the mater folowyng whyche sal be the second book is of a Romaunce maad of thauncyent facyon wythoute grete ordynaunce in frensshe wherof I haue been encyted for to reduce in prose by chapytres ordeyned. which book after somme and moost comunely is called "Fyerabras," by cause that thys Fyerabras was so meruayllous a geaunte as I sal make mencyon whyche was vanquysshed by Olyuer, And at the laste baptysed was after a saynt in heuen. And in effect it speketh of that bataylle and of the relyques conquered whiche had ben taken of rome(*Note: "of rome:" orig. a rome.*) and were in the puyssaunce of the admyrall whyche was fader of fyerabras. wherfore in thys book folowyng I ne entende but onely to reduce thauncyent ryme in to prose to deuyde the mater by chapytres in the best ordynaunce that I sal conne, wythoute to adiouste(*Note: "adiouste:" add. Fr. adioindre. On the word adjust, as representing the two Latin forms adjutare and adjustare, see Dr. Murray's paper in the Philological Society's Transactions, 1880.*) ony thyng that I haue not founde in the book competent,(*Note: "I haue not founde in the book competent:" this, unintelligible in itself, is explained by the original French, which reads, ou liure competent, the last word meaning containing.*) in lyke wyse as I sal fynde I sal reduce. And thys book is applyed to thonour of Olyuer one partye, Not-wythstondyng that there ben many other maters. For I suppose that of eueriche of the barons pryncypal of themperour Charles whyche ben sayd comynly in nombre xij or xiiij, and pyeres of Fraunce, whyche were capytaynes of thexcercyte and moche stronge and valyaunte of theyr persones, were grete lordes and noble. But of the lordes valyaunte capytaynes were more than xiiij after that I fynde.(*Note: See the different lists of the douzeperes, as given in the various romances in my note to Sir Ferumbras, l. 259, where the list given as that found in the Sowdane of Babyloyne should be read as that of the original French version in the Grenville copy, 10531. The names given in the Sowdone will be found in Dr. Hausknecht's Introduction to his edition of that romance, p. xxvii. For the names in Roland and Otuel, see my edition, note to l. 688.*) Fyrst there was rolland, Erle of Cenonia, sone of myllon erle and of dame berthe propre syster of kyng Charles: After hym was Olyuer Erle, sone of Reyner of gennes, which Reyner was also at thexcercyte of kyng charles: After hym Rychard of Normandy, Garyn duck of Lorayn, Geffroy lord of bourdeloys, Hoel Erle of Nautes, Ogyer the danois, kyng of denmarke, Lamberd prynce of bruxellys, Naymes Duk of bauyer, Thiery duc of ardanne, Basyn of beneuoys, Guy of bourgoyne, Caudeboy kyng of Fryse, Ganellon which dyd the treson at the ende of the iij book at rounyuale, Sampson duk of bourgoyne: Also there was Ryol du mauns, Alory, guyllermet the scot and many other that were subgettes to Charles. And notwythstondyng that they were not alwaye with hym They that I haue tofore named were alwaye redy for to doo his commaundement. And the moost parte of them that I haue tofore named were wyth hym contynuelly.

Of Fyerabras how he came to excyte thexcercyte of Charles: capitulo ij [correction; sic = [j]]

The admyral of spayne named ballan, a paynym moche grete puyssaunt of body and of peple, had a sone named Fyerabras the moost meruayllous geaunt that euer was seen borne of moder, for of the gretenes hugenes of hys body and also of his strengthe to hym was none like. the whyche was kyng of Alexandrye helde vnder hym the contree of babylyne vnto the rede see, and he was lord of roussye, of coulloygne, more ouer vnder hym was Iherusalem, retheyned the holy sepulcre of our lord Ihesu Cryst: by hys grete puyssaunce entred on a tyme in to Rome where he dyd moche euyl bare awaye the holy crowne of our lord the holy naylles other relyques ynoughe, Of whome thys book shal in thende recounte how they were recouerd. And he was called Fyerabras of alexandrye, whyche after that many warres bataylles were maad in Mormyonde bytwene the paynyms and thexcercyte of Charles Thys fyerabras moche dyssolute came rydyng by grete furour for to fynde somme cristen man for to fyght ayenst hym; came vnto the lyces of Kyng Charles moche furyous and eschauffed as he shold fyght al armed and wel founnysshed of wepen, was ryght euyl contente that he fonde no persone to whome he

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

myght fyght, nygh vnto the lyces he went to beholde the armes of them—perour charles whyche were of the aygle synyng,(*Note: Compare Sir Ferumbras, l. 78.*)And he sware by Mahomet his god by his myt that he wold neuer departe tyll he had foughten made batayll to somme crysten man. And he seeyng that no man cam to hym began to crye with an hye voys: "O kyng of Parys, coward withoute hardynesse, sende to Iuste ayenst me somme of thy barons of fraunce the moost stronge the moste hardy, as Rolland, olyuer, Thyerry, or ogyer the danoys; swere to the by my god Mahon that I sal not refuse vnto the nombre of vj or vij that they sal be receyued of me. and yf thou make to me reffuse of thys that I of the demaunde I promyse the that tofore or it be nyt thou salt of me be assaylled dyscomfyted I sal smyte of thy heed as meschaunt withoute ony fayllyng; and after I sal lede with me Rolland Olyuer vnhappy, meschaunt, caytyfs. For oultragously folyly as euyl and olde(*Note: "as euyl and olde:" Fr. comme mauvais viella t.*) thou hast enprysed to come in to thys contreye wherfro thou salt haue cause hastily to departe." These wordes or semblable spoken Fyerabras wente hym vnto the sadowe of a tree and laye there dysarmed hym of the armes of whyche he was cladde, and bonde his hors vnto a tree. and whan he was thus at his ease he began to crye with an hye voys: "o charlemayn, kyng of Parys, where art thou now whome I haue thys day so ofte called? wythoute more lenger delaye sende to Iuste ayenst me rolland or Olyuer, of whom thou makest so grete counte and been so valyaunte, or ogyer the danoys whom I haue herde preysed. And yf peraventure one of them dare not come allone hardyly late come the two or thre or foure of the moost valyauntest and that they be courageous hardy and wel armed. And yf the four dare not come late come fyue, For vnto the nombre of vj of the moost valyauntest of thyn excersyte I sal not refuse. And I thynke not to retorne tyl they be confused and destroyed by me. for be ye sure that it shal neuer be to me reproche that I be fugytyf(*Note: "that I be fugytyf:" Fr. ie soie fugi.*) for ony frensshe man luyng. I haue here tofore put to deth by the valyaunce of my persone ten kynges of grete puyssaunce, and that they coude not resyste ageynst my strengthe in no wyse.

How Richard' of Normandye sayd' to Charles what maner man Fyerabras was: ca. iij

Assone as fyerabras had fynysshed hys wordes the Emperour Charles whyche wel had herde hym meruaylled moche of hys langage, And demaunded Rychard of Normandye what was that Turke that so had cryed wyth soo hye a voys vpon the valyaunce of hys persone. For kyng Charles sayd: "I haue wel herkened what he hath said that he sal not fayle to fyght ayenst vj of the moost valyauntest of myn excersyte." To whome Rychard Duke of normandye ansuerd: "Syr kyng, thys is a man meruayllous ryche and one of the strengest borne of moder: And he is a sarasyn of so grete fyerste that he ne preyseth kyng ne erle ne none other persone of the world."

Whan Charles vnderstood hym he began to clawe his heed, And sware by Saynt Denys of fraunce that he sold not ete ne neuer drynke tyl one of the pyeres of fraunce sold goo Iuste ageynst hym, And demaunded of Rychard of Normandye how thys Paynym was named. Rychard answerd: "syr Emperour, this paynym nameth hym self Fyerabras, which is moche to redoubte and hath done moche harme to(*Note: Ed. or.*) crysten men. He hath slayn the Pope, hanged abbottes, monkes, and nonnes, and hath deffuled chyrches(*Note: These exploits are related in the Sowdone of Babytone, pp. 4 et seq.*). And he hath robbed taken awaye the holy crowne of our lord and many other relyques for whome ye take grete payne. And he holdeth Iherusalem in grete subjectyon And the holy sepulcre wherin god was buried." Wherupon Charles ansuerd: "of thys that thou hast sayd to me I am more angry than I was, but knowe thou for certayn I salle neuer haue Ioye tyll that my desyre be accomplysshed and that he be vaynquysshed." And of that fayt al the frensshe men were commoeued and troubled And ther was not one that presented hym for to goo to hym. And whan charles sawe that noo persone was of courage for to goo and fyght agenst thys geaunt Fyerabras He sayd to Rolland: "My dere neuewe, I praye that thou dyspose the for tassaylle thys turke that thou doo there deuoyr."

Of the answer of Roulland to the Emperour sodeynlye and' what it was: capitulo iij

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

Whan themperour Charles had spoken thus curtoysly vnto his neuewe Rolland, Folyly wythoute reason Rolland answerd hym thus: "Fayr vncle, speke neuer to me therof, For I had leuer that ye were confused and dysmembred than I shold take armes or hors for to Iuste lyke as ye say. For on the last day that we were so nyghe taken of the paynmys, that is to say of moo than fyfty thousand, we yonge knyghtes bare the burthen and suffred many mortal strokes, of whych olyuer my felowe is quasi hurt vnto the deth.(Note: "quasi hurt, &c.:" hurt almost to the death.) For yf ye had not be socoured of vs the hole destructyoun had been of vs and thende: whan we repayred and were in our lodgys for to take reste at euen, whan ye were wel dronken ye maad auaunte openlye that the olde and auncyent knyghtes whyche ye had brout wyth you for to ayde vs had moche better borne them in the fayt of armes and had more stronge bataylle than the yonge knyghtes. And euery man knoweth wel how I was that euenyng assembled and wery of trauaylle that I took in that day. And by my faders soule that was euyll sayd of you. And now it sal be knowen how the olde auncyent knyghtes sal bere them, for by god whyche ought to haue al in his subjectyoun there is noo yonge man in my companye that euer sal be in my fauour and loue yf he take vpon hym to Iuste ageynst the Paynym." Also sone as Roulland had spoken that worde Themperour hys vncle hauyng moche Indignacion therat smote hym thwarte the vysage wyth hys ryght gauntelet(Note: *Ed. ganntetet.*) that hys nose breste a blood habundauntly of the stroke. Thenne Roulland in a grete furye sette honde on hys swerde whan he sawe hys blood, and had smeton hys vncle yf he had not be lette by them that were presente. And whan Charles sawe thentencyon of Roulland he was meruaylously abashed sayd: "O god of heuen, who wold haue thought that I sold haue had vylonye of Rolland my neuew whyche been knytte to—gyder in one fayth ayenst our aduersaryes? And he cometh rennyng agenst me wyth affectyoun mortal He that is moost nexte of my blood and lignage that here is present, And that more sonner sold socoure me than ony other! Now I beseche God that on the crosse suffred passyon that this day he be punysshed as he is worthy." And this said in a grete furour he comaunded the freysshe men sayd to them anone: "take ye hym, for I sall neuer ete tyl he be delyuerd to deth." Whan the freysshe men vnderstood the commaundement of Charles for to haue accomplyssed it that one loked vpon that other for to see who wold sette fyrst honde vpon hym. And whan Roulland sawe the fayt he withdrewe hym a litel a—parte wyth hys swerde in hys honde, cryeng with an hyghe voys and sayeng to theym: "yf ye be wyse holde you styll, For I make a—vowe to god that yf ony of you moeue to come to me I sal make of hys heed two partes." wherfore there was not one that durst ne that was soo hardy to meue ageynst hym in malyce but were ryght sory euyll contente of theyr debate. and there vpon the noble Ogier came swetelye to Roulland and sayd to hym: "Syr Roulland, me semeth ye doo not wel for to angre thus your vncle the emperour, whom by reason ye ought aboute alle other to loue and defende also supporte." Roulland answerd, whyche thenne was refrayned of hys Ire: "Syr Ogyer, I promyse you for a lytel fayt I was determyned to a grete oultrage wythoute aduys and enclyned, wherof now I am sory and me repenteth."

How the kyng charles and' Roulland' been repreued' by the auctour and' somewhat excused' vpon the debate aforesayd': ca. v

Vpon the debate of themperour and Rolland hys neuewe I wyll a lytyl tarye, and speke fyrst to the kyng Charles, whyche haste be Instructe syth thyn Infancye in alle scyences ful of maners digne of commemoracyon: whiche knewest the constauce of the auncyents and the mutabylyte of the yonge peple. why saydest thou on the euene that the auncyent and olde knyghtes in the warre of that day had borne them better than the yonge knyghtes? And thou knewest wele that Olyuer was gretely hurte by hys valyaunce, in suche wyse that he kepeth hys bedde. And also Rolland thy neuewe had borne the grete burthen of the bataylle. And yf he had spoken foliily thou oughtest to haue supported hys fyrst moeuyng whiche is not in the pyssaunce of a man. yf thou haddest taken aduys at the word that sayth: "Vindictam differ donec pertranseat furor: That is to say thou oughtest to dylate thy vengeance tyll the furour be passed, Thou sholdest not haue smyton Rolland, Sythe whan he sayd euyl it was wythout aduys of grete dycrecyon. thou smotest hym semblably, wythout aduys he drewe hys swerde ayenst the, And though thou haddest not smeton hym thou myghtest well haue reprehended hym of his offence. Thou oughtest to remembre ecclesyastes whyche sayth: "*Nichil agas in operibus iniurie* :." whan a man receyueth wronge Iniurye it is not good that he doo that whyche he may doo. And also it is whan a persone hath wel doon hys deuoyr, And of hym of whome he ought to haue hys thanke and preysyng is blamed, of soo moche the more is he euyll contente

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

and wrothe. For hys fayt is reputed for nought. In lyke wyse was it of Rolland whyche thought more to haue be allowed preyed for the grete deuoyr that he dyd than to here that the Emperour sayd that tholde knyghtes had doon better than the yonge. but now I wyl retorne to the, O Rolland, whiche hast been so noble. Fro whens cometh in the suche audacyte to speke ageynst thyn vncler whyche hath allwaye doon so wel to the that hys werkes been worthy to be remembred? To hym wich is emperour Kyng of Fraunce and lord of so grete cremeur (*Note: "cremeur:" in the original the same.*), and to thyn vncler as (*Note: "as," read hast: Fr. qui as.*) taken debate and ansuerd outrageously was it not reason that thou oughtest to suffre hym, and he not the? yf he smote the wyth hys gauntelet by maner of correctyon oughtest thou to drawe thy swerde to hym? Thou hast not in remembraunce the obeysaunce of ysaac whyche he had to hys fader: thou were not aduysed of thys that thapostle saith: "ye yonge men kepe your courage And put not the furour therof in exersite." yf the Emperour for hys dysporte preyed thauncyent knyghtes yet sayd he not that thou haddest not doon wel. And Saynt Poule sayth in hys epystle, that a man shold not repreue hym that is more auntyent than hym self, but a man ought to entretene and supporte hym as his fader. but the dede is suche that a persone reputeth not an Iniurye to hym sayd to be lytel ne yf he be hurte that he be pacyent: wherfore it is good to thynke tofore or he speke it, And gladly to doo ne say thyng but yf it be good.

How Olyuer was dysposed to fyght agenst Fyerabras, notwythstondyng that he was hurt, after many wordes: capitulo vj

Moche wroth was Charles wyth Rolland hys neuewe And sayd to hys Peres of Fraunce: "Lordes, O how I am in dyuers thoughtes of my neuewe Rolland, whyche wold haue Iniuryed my persone, To whome I had more affyaunce than to ony man luyng! I wote neuer whome I ought to loue, ne whome I ought to hate. And yet furthermore I haue noo man now present for to Iuste ageynst thys Paynym that hath chalenged me." Thenne aroos vp tofore hym Naymes the Duc of bauyers whych sayd to the kyng: "Syr Emperour, I praye you requyre that ye leue these wordes noyouses. Alle sal be wel And another shal goo Iuste ageynst the sarasyn." But neuertheles the kyng was in grete thought, For there was none that wold goo ne take it on hym. Incontynente the tydynges of the debate of charles and Rolland were brought to Olyuer, whyche was in another place seek in hys bedde. And also how Fyerabras was comen And that there was no persone present wyth the kyng for to Iuste ayenst hym. And hereupon the noble erle Olyuer, replenyssed wyth a noble courage and wyth an ardaunt desyre for to playse the kyng, whan he had herde these tydynges aroos oute of hys bedde and began for to scratche and strayne hys armes and to fele yf it were possyble to hym to bere armes.

And he thus dooyng his woundes began newly to opene that the blood sprange oute of the dystresse. And not wythstondyng alle that as he that sette not moche therby

For the grete loue and desyre that he had to the kyng he dyd do bynde hys woundes the beste wyse he myght and after sayd to garin his squyer that he shold bryng hym hys armes, For he wold arme hym for to goo Iust ayenst the sarsyn. To whome garin sayd: "syr Olyuer, in thonour of god take pyte of your owne persone. For me thynketh ye wil willynggly slee your self." Olyuer sayd to hym: "do my commaundement no man ought to tarye to seche hys honour and auancement and renomme. And wyth good ryght I may employe my self for to serue my prynce and synguler lord, and sythe that I see that noo frensshe man auanceth hym I sall not faylle at the poynte, for the comyn prouerbe sayth: 'At nede a man knoweth hys frende.'*(Note: "At nede a man knoweth hys frende." See the Gesta Romanorum, p. 131.)* Now anone bryng to me myn armes wythoute more taryeng." And so Olyuer dyd doo arme hym by the sayd Garyn hys squyer, whiche sette on his legge harnays, hys hawberke, hys helme, and hys harnays necessarye. And whan he was alle furnyssed he took hys swerde named hauteclere, the whyche swerde he moche loued.*(Note: See note to Sir Ferumbras, l. 988.)*

After brought he hym hys hors the moost specyall that he loued whyche was named Ferraunt despaygne. And whan he was brought tofore hys alle saddled and brydled The Ioly and gentyl Olyuer sprange in to the sadle wythoute settinge foot in the styrop, and sette hys selde at hys ease and in hys honde a myghty spere sarpe whych

How Olyuer was dysposed to fyght agenst Fyerabras, notwythstondyng that he was hurt, after many wordes: c

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

garyn took to hym(*Note*: "took to hym." The original adds, *qui estoit estachie a dix riches cloux de fin or.*). And after smote the hors wyth the sporres so harde that in the leepyng he maad hys hors to bowe vnder hym. It was a good syght to see Olyuer on horsback wyth a moche fyers countenance. And they that were presente bysought Ihesu Cryst our redemar that he sold take hym in hys kepyng. For in that day he sold fyght ageynst the moost stronge and moost fyers paynym that euer was born of moder or euer was in thys world, That is Fyerabras of Alexandrye, sone of the admyral Ballant of spayne, of whome we salle see by the playsyr of god the termynacyon after. He beyng thus on horsback in grete poynt vpon hys vysage and vpon his body he maad the sygne of the crosse in the name of Ihesus and commaunded hym self to the wylle of god, whyche that day sold be to hym in comforte and ayde after hys good entencyon. And of euery man he was byseen and knowen that he had hys hert hole in hys body for to do grete feat of armes: so rode forth vnto the lyces of themperour Charles with whom was the Duc naymes, guyllam de scot, Gerard de mondydyer, and Ogyer the danoys, wyth other barons of fraunce(*Note*: *Ed. Freunce.*): emonge alle other there was Rolland moche sorouful of the wordes that he had ayenst his vncler the kyng, for gladly he wold haue doo the bataylle yf he had not wythsayed it tofore the kyng whan he was requyred. Thus Olyuer beyng seen tofore Charles was moche alowed preysed of one and other moche affectuously byholden. And the said olyuer put doun his helme and byhelde the lodgyce(*Note*: "lodgyce:" Fr. *logis*) of the kyng, And reuerently came salewed hym, and after sayd to hym: "Noble emperour, puysaunt, redoubted, and my synguler lord, I beseche you to here me ye know wel that there ben iij yeres past that I haue been in your seruyce and haue had of you no rewarde ne wages. I you suplye with al myn herte that now ye wyll rewarde me wyth a yefte that I sal desyre." To whom the kyng ansuerd: "Olyuer, noble erle, I assure to you by my fayth that I sal do it wyth a good wylle. And assone as we shall be in fraunce there is neyther cyte, borugh, ne castel that ye wyl haue ne none other thyng that to me is possyble faysyble that sal be denyed to you." "Syr kyng," said Olyuer, "I am not comen to you for to demaunde suche thyng. But I demaunde and requyre of you the bataylle ayenste the paynym so oute of mesure.(*Note*: "oute of mesure:" so outrageous in his conduct and language. "At thys houre, &c.:" Fr. *de cette heure ie vous otroie.*) And at thys houre I graunte to you alle my goodes and seruyces for this yefte to be quyte of them." whan the frensshe men had herde Olyuer they were all abashed of hys prowesse eche of them loked on other and said emonge them: "A! saynt marie, what hath Olyuer founden, whyche is hurt quasi to deth wyl now goo to fyght and bataylle?" "O Olyuer," answerd charles, "thou hast loste thy wytte, For thou knowest wel that wyth a spere heed square and sarpe thou hast be hurte and wounded mortally and now thou wylt abandonne thy self to a gretter daunger mortall. beware! Retorne, and take thy reste. For truste well that for noo thyng I sal suffre the to do that fayte sythen that thou arte not presently in helthe of thy body." Vpon thys poynte aroos ganellon and Andrewe(*Note*: "Andrewe:" Fr. *Andrieu*, does not appear again in the present or any other account of the treason at Roncesvalles, so far as I am aware.) the traytres that dyd the trayson as the laste book shall make mencyon.

And Ganellon sayd: "Syr Kyng, ye haue ordeynged in Fraunce that it, whyche by ij of vs is Iuged, ought to be holden, and so is it that we ij Iuge ordeyne that Olyuer salle goo and doo the bataylle."(*Note*: Compare the corresponding passages in *Sir Ferumbras*, ll. 310 *et seq.*, and the notes.) wherfore the kyng ful of maltalente, wyth coloure chaunged, answerd: "Ganellon, thou arte of euyll dysposycyon wythoute spekyng that whyche is honourable. Sythe it so is he sal doo the bataylle it may none otherwyse be but that he be dede. But I swere to the my trouth that yf he be taken or put to deth al the gold of the world sal not saue the but that thou salt dye a vylaynous deth I shal destroye thy lygnage." "Syr Emperour," sayd Ganellon, "god and our lady kepe me;" after the traytre sayd to hym self secretly(*Note*: "secretly:" Fr. *comme entre ses dens*. Cf. *Sir Ferumbras*, 322.): "God forbede that euer Olyuer retorne but that he haue hys heed smyton of." and whan themperour sawe that he myght not gaynsaye but that olyuer sold goo and doo the bataylle ayenst Fyerabras he sayd: "I praye god of the fyrmamente gyue the grace to do wel that thou mayst retorne wyth Ioye," And took hys ryght gloue and threwe it to Olyuer, the which he receyued wyth grete desyre wylle in thankyng hym ryght humbly and takyng leue of al moche swetely.

How Olyuer was requyred' by his fader reyner that he shold not fyght wyth the geaunt, but for al that he went forth: ca. vij

Whan that Olyuer was lycenced for to goo do hys bataylle and was redy to departe, Reyner of genes hys fader came to the kyng and by grete compassyon kneled down at hys feet and sayd: "Syr kyng, I crye you mercy haue pyte of my sone and me. I say as for me ye wyl al dyscomforte me whan I see that my sone gooth to perdycyon seeyng the daunger that hys persone is in. I say also that ye take pyte of his presumptuous yongthe, of hys desyre ouer couetous, and of hys body wounded daungerously. ye knowe wel that a man that is hurte so sore and that hath loste of hys blood may not wel endure bataylle." But Reyner loste hys payne, For the kyng had gyuen to hym hys gloue in sygne of lycence,(*Note*: "the kyng had gyuen to hym hys gloue in sygne of lycence." The usual mode of giving permission to undertake a duel: compare *Roland and Otuel*, l. 1366, and the *Song of Roland*, l. 482, and notes.) And not-wythstondyng these wordes doubted no thyng but that he sold wel do hys deuoyr and valyauntly. And yet ageyn reyner requyred the kyng and sayd: "Syr kyng, in thonour of hym that for vs deyed on the crosse suffre not my sone to Iust. Alas! whan I shal haue lost my sone where sal I become?(*Note*: "where shal I become:" what will become of me? See Prof. Skeat's note to *P. Plowman*, B. v. 651.) and ye may wel fynde other for to take thys bataylle in honde." Themperour Charles answerd: "Reyner, ye knowe wel that I may not gaynsaye that I haue to hym graunted. For in sygne of lycence I haue gyuen hym my gloue, wherof Olyuer was contente." thenne Olyuer sayd wyth an hye voys tofore alle the people: "Syr kyng, and alle ye barons, I beseche you alle of a yefte, that is that I requyre you yf I haue mesprysed or mysdoon in dede or in worde ony ayenst you that in the name of god ye pardonne me." whan the frenssh men herde hym so speke There was none but that he wepte ten-derly, and soo takyng hys leue wyth his standard reysed The kyng blessyd hym in makyng the sygne of the crosse, And wepyng comaunded hym in the keypyng of the fader of the sone of the holy ghoost.

How Olyuer spake to Fyerabras, whyche sette noo thyng by hym, with other disputacions: capitulo viij

Olyuer departed rode forth on hys waye taryed not tyl that he cam where as fyerabras was, which was al vnarmed and laye in the sadowe. and whan Olyuer had aresonned hym The paynym torned his heed ayenst hym and dayned vnnethe to loke on hym. For he setted nought by hym(*Note*: "he setted nought by hym:" took no thought or heed of him.) by-cause he was so lytel of stature to the regarde of Fyerabras. And thenne Olyuer said to the sarasyn: "Awake, thou, thou hast thys day so ofte called vs that I am come hyther. And I praye the that thou telle to me thy name." Fyerabras ansuerd to hym: "by Mahoun, my god, to whome I owe honour I am the moost ryche man that is in the world borne. Fyerabras of alexandrye am I named: I am he that thou knowe that dyd doo destroye rome your cyte, slewe the Pope and many other and bare awaye the relyques that I there founde, For which ye take grete payne and laboure to recouer them. And furthermore I holde Iherusalem that fayre cyte, and the sepulcre in whych your god rested." Olyuer ansuerd: "by my fayth, I haue gladly herde the say that whyche thou hast sayd. And yf it be trouthe that thou hast sayd for certeyn now thou mayst repute thy self well vnhappy and myschaunt. Now wythoute more talkyng make the redy and arme the. seest thou yonder the frensshe men that doo no thyng but byholde vs? wherfore depesse the, or(*Note*: *Ed.* For; "or:" I have corrected the reading in accordance with the original, which has *ou.*) by the god on whome I byleue I salle smyte the there as thou lyst." whan Fyerabras herde that he spake soo hardyly he began to lawhe and sayd: "I am wel admeruaylled fro whens that cometh to the suche presumpcion to speke so hastyly, but for trouthe I sal not remeue fro hens tyll I knowe who thou arte and of what lygnage. And whan thou hast tolde to me thy name thou salt see me armed." Olyuer ansuerd to hym: "O paynem, know thou for trouthe that or it be nyght thou salt knowe what I am. by me sendeth to the charles the Emperour, my redoubted lord, that for the conservacion(*Note*: *Ed.* consecracion.)of thy body and the saluacyon of thy soule thou leue the creauce of thy god Mahoun, of other ydolles, whyche ben but abusyon and decepyon: whych haue neyther wytte, ne reason, ne feelyng, ne good vnderstondyng. wherfore that thou encline the to consente and thynke fro hens forth to byleue in god almyghty the holy Trynyte, the fader, the sone, and the holy ghoost, iij persones in one essence of one wylle: whyche hath made heuen erthe and al that there in dwelleth: whyche for our saluacion wold be borne of the vyrgyn marie. whan thou salt haue this byleue

How Olyuer was requyred' by his fader reyner that he shold not fyght wyth the geaunt, but for al that ~~he~~ went fo

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

wyth the holy sacrament of baptesme, which is vpon this establysshed, thou mayst come to the glorie eternal. and yf thou do not lyke as I haue taught the I am here redy to doo bataylle ayenst the, and of two thynges thou must doo that one. Fyrst, that thou departe oute of thys contree as ouercomen to bere nothyng with the, or thou must come and fyght ayenst me For tenhaunce thy body to susteyne thy fals lawe." Fyerabras answerd: "whatsomeuer thou arte thou arte ouer presumptuous to haue Intencyon for to fyght ageynst me. For surely yf thou see me on fote wythoute armes thou salt be wel hardy yf thou tremble not for drede to approche me. But by the god in whome thou byleuest Say to me what man is Charlemayn, For it is long sythe I herde hym fyrst preyed and redoubted in many contrees: and also that I may haue tydynges of rolland Olyuer, of Ogyer the danoys and of gerarde de mondydyer, For by my trouthe I wold fayn be acqueynted with them." (*Note: Compare Chanson de Roland, 376. "Jamais n'iert hum qui encuntre lui vaillet."*) Olyuer ansuerd: "Paynym, vpon that thou me demaundest I telle to the that Charles themperour is so grete a maystre that there is no man in the World may compare to hym, as wel for the valure of hys persone, of hys counceyl, of hys maners, as of hys puyssaunce and rychesses Innumerable of regarde. Of hys neuewe Rolland he is wythoute pere, Olyuer lytel lasse than he; and as for the other frensshe men emonge al people humayn they be valyaunte men. but thyse wordes haue noo place here, depesse the and arme the, For by the god on whom I byleue yf thou auauance the not I salle smyte the wyth thys swerde of stele." Fyerabras began to lyfte vp hys heed and sayd: "By my god mahommet, yf I thought not that it sold be my dysonour I sold now smyte of thy heed." Olyuer ansuerd: "I praye the leue thys pletyng, For or it be euen thou salt knowe what I am, For certeyn I haue entencyon to plunge my swerde in thy bely." where vpon Fyerabras was not wroth, so moche noble was he, and rested hys heed vpon hys selde and sayd to Olyuer: "I sette not therby, but I praye the telle to me thy name thy lygnage." Olyuer sayd to hym: "my name is garyn, and am borne in perrogort, sone of a man called Iosue, whyche came that other day in to fraunce where I was adoubed knyght by the noble kyng Charles and am ordeyned for to defende hys ryght also to fyght ayenst the. wherfor conclude wythoute more taryeng arme the take thy hors, for I am redy to doo the bataylle yf thou be soo hardy to abyde me." Fyerabras wold not consente to the bataylle, For hym thought that olyuer was to litel to Iuste ayenst hym and sayd to hym: "Garyn, I demaunde of the wherfore is not comen hyther rolland ne Olyuer or Gerard or Ogyer, whyche been of so grete renommee as I haue herd say?" Olyuer ansuerd: "The cause wherfore they be not comen to the is for they sette nought by the they haue desdayn to come, but I am comen to the as he that taketh noo regarde to theyr Intencyon and sal do the bataylle ayenst the yf thou wylt abyde it. But I swere to the by saynt Petre the appostle of Ihesu Cryst that yf thou arme the not I sal smyte the to the deth wyth thys darte that I holde in my honde." "Garyn," answerd Fyerabras, "I sal say to the that sythe I was adoubed knyght I Iusted neuer but ayenst a kyng, an erle, or a baron of grete valure, and thou art departed of a lowe hous (*Note: "thou art departed of a lowe hous:" Fr. tu es bien de basse main party*) for to say that I sold haue adoo wyth the: it sold be to me ouer grete dysonour yf thou were put to deth by me. but for the goodwylle that I knowe in the whyc is moche noble I am contente that thou smyte me and I sal falle down to therthe, and take thou my hors my selde and goo thou to kyng Charles and say to hym that thou hast vaynquysshed me. And yf I do thys for the I do to the grete amytye And thou oughtest for thys tyme to be contente." On whiche wordes Olyuer coude not haue pacyence but that he sayd to hym: "Thy fayt lyeth in noo thyng but in wordes full of folysshe presumpsyon. I am of thys intencion that byfore euensonge tyme I sal make thy hede flee from thy soldres. I am none hare ne wylde beest for to be aferde, And thou knowest the comyn prouerbe that sayth that there is a tyme of spekyng and tyme of beyng styll, And of one and that other one may be reputed a fool. Now come of depesse the of that I haue sayd the or ellys I sal slee the." Fyerabras answerd: "I desyre ne praye the of no thyng but that thou sende to me Rolland or olyuer or one of thother knyghtes of the rounde table. (*Note: "of the rounde table." An addition of the translator.*) And yf one of them be not hardy for to come, late come ij or iij or iiij attones For by me they sal not be refused." In making these desputacyons Olyuer which sore was hurte the day tofore his woundes opened by force of rydyng and of chauffyng bledde sore so that fyerabras sawe the blood renne down by is knee, And demaunded of hym fro whens came that blood that soo renneth down to therthe: "I trowe thou be hurte." (*Note: "I trowe thou be hurte." Not in the original.*) Olyuer sayd: "I am not hurte but my hors is harde atte spore wherof he is blody." Fyerabras behelde sawe it was not of the hors and answerd: "Certes, garyn, thou sayest not sooth for thou art hurte in thy body I knowe it wel by the blood that cometh down by thy knee: but see what I shal do for the: there been two flagons (*Note: "flagons:" barilz: "botelles" in the Sowdan, l. 1185: "costrel" in Sir Ferumbras, l. 510, on which see note and Introd., p. xii; at p. 60, l. 6, below, they are called "barylles."*) hangyng on the sadle of my hors

How Olyuer was requyred' by his fader reyner that he shold not fyght wyth the geaunt, but for al that ~~he~~ went fo

whyche ben full of the bawme that I conquered in Iherusalem, it is the same of whyche your god was enbawmed wyth whan he was taken doun fro the crosse and layed in hys graue. hye the, and goo drynke therof, I promyse to the that Incontynent thou salte be hole and thenne thou salt mowe defende the wel wythoute daunger." Olyuer ansuerd that he wold not that he sayd was folye. Thenne fyerabras ansuerd that he was a fool wythoute reason, And that it myght happe to repente hym.

How after many dysputacyons Olyuer ayded' arme Fyerabras, and' of the ix meruayllous swerdes, And' how olyuer named' his name: ca. ix

Whan fyerabras had long abyden lyeng wythoute arysyng for Olyuer he satte vp and after sayd: "Garyn, I demaunde the wythoute hydyng of what strengthe is Rolland Olyuer that been soo moche redoubted of paynems, of what gretenes ben they of?" Olyuer answerd: "as towchyng to rolland he is a lytel lasse of body than I am, but of courage he is right hardy to fyght and so chyualrous that there is no man lyuyng in the world lyke to hym. For he neuer faught yet ayenst ony man in the world but he vaynquysshed hym. and as for Olyuer thou mayst wel apperceyue that he is a man moche semblable and lyke to me and of the same gretenes that I am." Thenne sayd Fyerabras: "by the fayth that I owe to my god appollyn to Termagaunt(*Note: "Termagaunt:" Fr. Taluagaunt.*) thou tellest to me a thyng wherof I am moche abasshed. For yf they were suche foure as thou tellest to me I wold not refuse them ne leue them tyl I had put them to deth wyth my swerde." Olyuer coude no lenger forbere ne haue pacyence vnto the delayes of fyerabras but made redy to smyte hym, wherfore Fyerabras sayd to hym: "thou wylt haue no pyte on thyn owne persone,*(Note: Ed. personr.)* By mahoun my god yf I aryse take my hors Charles thy kyng ne alle thy goddes*(Note: Ed. goodes; "goddes:" the reading has been corrected on the authority of the original, which has dieulx.)* sal not redeme the but that thou salt Incontynente be slayn. For onely yf thou see me tofore the on my feet thou salt be moche corageous yf thou tremble not for fere."

Olyuer answerd: "thou hast vaunted the ouerlonge to doo thyng whiche thou neuer sawest in thy lyue. For better it were to speke by mesure, for by ouer moche spekyng otherwyse than trouthe may brynge the soone to myschyf." Herof was fyerabras strongely despyteous And roos on hys feet in a grete fyersnes, whyche was by comyn estymacyon xv foot longe. And yf he wold haue be baptysed and byleue in Ihesu Cryst ther had neuer be seen a man of his valure. And whan he was a-foot he had grete dysplaysyr by cause he had not a valyaunte man to Iuste agenst hym, and sayd to Olyuer: "In trouthe I haue grete pyte of thyn affaire for the noblesse of the courage that I see in the. I am yet contente for this present tyme that thou retorne And sende to me Rolland, or Olyuer, or Ogyer, or Gerard de mondydyer, and expressely say to Olyuer that I sall not passe thys auantgarde tyl I haue conquerd hym." Olyuer myght no lenger abyde the paynym for yf it had not be for hys honour he had smyten hym dyuers tymes vnarmed. And whan he must nedes fyght Fyerabras called Olyuer and prayed hym that he wold helpe to arme hym. Olyuer demaunded yf he myght truste hym. Fyerabras ansuerd: "helpe me hardyly, For I swere and assure the that neuer whyle I lyue sal I be traytour to no man lyuyng." And vpon that promyse olyuer dyd his diligence to arme hym, and he took fyrst lether of arabye*(Note: "lether of arabye:" Fr. cuir de capadoce.)* and cladde hym therwyth, after hys cote his habergeon of stele wele boucled polysshed: after sette on hys heed an helme garnysshed wyth precyous stones rychely. But wel considered the facyon of thys paynym and of this cristen man there was grete loyalte curtosye bytwene them whyche were assembled for to make mortal warre and eche to slee other, and yet they dyd eche to other synguler seruyce. Fyrst, the paynym had grete pyte for to destroye Olyuer For he was not hys pere ne egal to the regarde of hys persone*(Note: "to the regarde of hys persone:" i. e. in comparison with himself.)*. And on that other parte whan he sawe hym hurte and the blood descende to therthe he wold haue gyuen to hym of the precyous bawme. Semblably Olyuer, whan he fonde hym dysarmed he had slayne hym wythoute grete payne yf he had wold, and after he was soo curtoys that he ayded to arme hym that sold fyt ayenst hym. O, what grete loyalte of noblesse was bytwene them whyche were of fayth and creaunce contrarye! I suppose*(Note: "I suppose:" i. e. I am sure.)* that god sold be wel pleased yf there were suche confyaunce emonge crysten men and so ful of naturel noblesse. But I retorne ageyn to my mater. Whan Fyerabras was wel armed he thanked moche Olyuer, And after gyrde hys swerde named plourance.*(Note: Ed. plousance.)* and in the arson of his sadyl he had tweyne other of whom that one was named baptysme and that

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

other grabam(*Note: "grabam." The names of Ferumbras' swords are not given in *Sir Ferumbras* or the *Sowdan*, but in the verse *Fierabras* are said to have been Plorance, Baptism, and *Garbain*.)*), the whyche swerdes were maad in suche wyse that there was none harnoyes but they wold breke and cutte a—sondre. And who that wyl demaunde the maner how they were made by whom I wyl saye(*Note: "I wyl saye:" omitted also in the original, but plainly needed.)* after that whyche I haue founden by wrytyng. On a tyme there were thre brethern of one fader engendred, of whome that one was named Galaus, that other Munyfycans, the thyrd was called Agnisiax.(*Note: In the verse *Fierabras* the names appear as *Galans*, *Munificans*, and *Aurisas*.)* These iij brethern made ix swerdes, eche of them thre. Agnisiax the thyrd brother maad the swerde named baptesme, whiche had the pomel of gold and wel enameld, also plourance,(*Note: Ed. plousance.*) and after Grabam; whyche thre swerdes fyerabras had as I haue sayd. Munyficans, that other brother, made another swerde whyche was named durandal, Whyche Rolland had. that other was called sauuognye and that other Cortan whyche Ogyer the danoyes had.(*Note: The verse *Fierabras* gives the names of the swords made by Munificans as *Durendal*, *Musaguine*, and *Courtain*.)* And galaus, that other brother, maad the swerd that was named Floberge, another called haulteclere, and that other Ioyouse, whyche Charlemayn had for a grete specyalte. and these iij brethern aforesayd were smythes wrought the sayd swerdes. And in thys poynte Fyerabras mounted on hors backe And took hys two barylles(*Note: "barylles." See p. 56, l. 27, and note.*) by hym ful of bawme, And henge aboute his necke his selde wiche was heuy and bended(*Note: "bended:" bound, banded: Fr. *bende* .)*) wyth yron and stele by meruayllous strengthe. And in the myddle of the same shelde was paynted hys god Appollyn. and after that he had commaunded hym to hys god he took his spere in hys honde, whyche was sarpe mortally heded with stele. It was meruaylle to see the corpulence of the sayd Paynym which sat on hys hors named feraunt of spayne, grete, thycke, pommelid, whyche had a specyall condycyon: For whan his mayster in fyghtyng put to the grounde hys aduersarye this hors maad gretter warre wythout comparyson than hys mayster. and thus they beyng on horsback Fyerabras sayd to Olyuer: "O garyn, gracyous and curtoys, yet I admoneste the for the gentylnesse that thou hast doon to me that thou wilt retorne without fyghtyng, For I haue pyte of thy valyaunte courage." Olyuer answerde: "alwaye thou spekest of grete folye for I shal not departe for to be in daunger to be dysmembred. For I am not he that thou wenest to make aferde: for by the helpe of the blessyd Ihesus thys day salt thou be yelden or deed or lyuyng vnto charles the emperour." Whan Olyuer had so spoken Fyerabras was meruayllously abashed of thys man that wold not lete for menace that he maad to hym, but wold haue the bataylle ayenst hym sayd to hym: "Thou art a crysten man and hast grete fayth at the mysteryes by you ordeyned, but I coniure the by the fonte in whyche thou were baptysed, and by the fayth that thou hast gyuen to the crosse wheron thy god henge and was naylled, And by the loyalte that thou owest to charles themperour, to rolland, and to the other pyeres of fraunce, thou say and telle to me the veryte of thy ryght name and of thy lygnage." Olyuer answerd: "Certes, Paynem, he that enduced the to speke to me in suche wyse hath wel taught the, For gretter ne more hyely myghtest thou not adiure me. Wherefore knowe thou that I am Olyuer the sone of Reyner, the Erle of Genes, the moost especyall felowe of rolland, and am one of the twelue peres." "In fayth," sayd Fyerabras, "I alwaye thought wel that thou were another than thou saydest to me, seen(*Note: "seen:" i. e. seeing, considering.*) thyn ardaunt courage and that I coude not make the aferde vpon the fayt of bataylle. And how, sir Oliuer, are ye hurte in the body? it sold be grete dysonour for me to ouercome you in bataylle destroye you. For I acounte you but a dede man whyche sold be a grete reproche, wherefore retorne ageyn for we haue don for this tyme: For alle the golde in the world I wold not doo suche a shame as to Iuste ayenst you." Thenne ansuerd Olyuer: "certeynlye ye sal. For by my hede whan we sal be assembled ye sal haue no courage to Iape ne playe wyth me for I sal make you wel to fele that I am noo dede man." And after Olyuer admonested hym swetely in this manere and sayd: "O paynym, or we procede ony ferther now I admonest the that thou byleue in god of heuen almyghty whiche hath made the and fourmed, to whome al thyng owen honoure and synguler creance. For he that taketh not aduys is borne in an euyl houre. And forsake Mahoun and thy goddes ful of abuse and decepcyon, dyspose the to be baptysed, thou salt haue to thy frende the grete charles and a specyall felowe of Rolland the chyualrous. And furthermore al the dayes of my lyf I shal neuer forsake thy companye." fyerabras ansuerd to hym: "thou remembreth(*Note: "thou remembreth:" Fr. *tu tauises*, i. e. thou thinkest of.*) a grete folye. For for no thyng I salle not byleue in your god ne sal forsake ne abandoune Mahoun. But on thys day yf thou arte frende of rolland, as thou sayest, so desplaysaunt ne sory was he neuer as I sal make hym for the."

How after many dysputacyons Olyuer ayded' arme Fyerabras, and' of the ix meruayllous swerdes, And how ol

How Olyuer and' fyerabras began to fyt, of the prayer of Charles for Olyuer, of other maters: capitulo x

Fyerabras olyuer were longe on horsback and it was so that fyerabras wold not lete hys hors renne ageynst Olyuer, But sayd: "my frende, I praye the þat thou drynke of my barylles by the vertue of the bawme that is therin Incontynent thou salt be heled sal mowe wel defende thy self ayenst me." "God forbede," sayd olyuer, "that by drynke thou be conquerd of me but by franke bataylle and harnoys fourbysshed." And thys sayd they lete theyr horses renne wyth a grete courage for to Iuste at vtterance.(Note: "vtterance:" Fr. *a oultrance* .)And as they came that one ageynst that other the frensshe men whyche were in their lodgys had grete fere and drede leste it shold mysfalle to Olyuer. And emonge al other charles al wepyng sayd: "O blessyd Ihesus, I requyre the that at this stroke(Note: "at this stroke:" Fr. *a cestuy cop*.) thou haue pyte of Olyuer my baron in suche wyse that I may see hym ageyn alyue in helthe!" and after feruently came in to hys chapel hydyng his vysage wyth hys mantel and kneled before the crosse and embraced the crucyfyx wyth grete teeres, sayeng: "My lord god, of whome I see here the remembraunce, I byseche the to helpe Olyuer, whyche for thexaltacyon of the crysten fayth is in daunger." Thus in contemplacyon of Charles fyerabras and olyuer gaf so grete strokes vpon theyr seldes that the hedes of their speres were by force bowed and entred(Note: "bowed and entred:" Fr. *plioiez et entrez*.) that the fyre sprange out on al sydes, and the shaftes of theyr speres were trouchonned(Note: "tronchonned:" Fr. *tronconne*, i. e. broken to pieces.)that the pyeces flewe in the ayer. The reynes of the brydles of theyr horses wente oute of theyr hondes. Bothe tweyne were so astoned of the stroke and theyr eyen so troubled that in a grete whyle(Note: "in a grete whyle:" Fr. *dune grant peece*, i. e. for a great while.) they knewe not on whos syde they were torned. and after that bothe were comen to them self Fyerabras drewe plouraunce hys swerde that henge by hys syde, And Olyuer took haulteclere meruayllously synyng cam vpon Fyerabras and on hyghe on hys helme gaf hym so grete a stroke that the floures and precyous stones wherof it was ennobled and garnyssed made(Note: "made:" an instance of the omission of the subject pronoun *he* before the verb. See p. 19, l. 27, and note.) to flee to the grounde; and with the same stroke in descendyng he touched hys solder, but the lether of capadoce saued hym. And the paynym was smyton so harde and sore that bothe hys feet were oute of the styroppes and almoost was ouerthrowen, wherof the frensshe men sayden al wyth one voys: "A! saynt marye, what a stroke hath Olyuer gyuen(Note: *Ed. gynen*.) to thys paynym!" "ye," sayd rolland, "meruayllously he smote hym! Now wold god of heuen," sayd Rolland, "that I were now vnder the selde of my gentyl felowe Olyuer, For of me or of the paynym sold sortly be seen the ende." To whom the Emperour answerd: "Ha! euyl gloton, I haue wel herde the spoken felon coward. It is not now tyme that thou so say, For atte begynnyng thou woldest not goo, wherof many tymes shalt thou be of me reproched." vpon whych thyng rolland ansuerd no thyng but that he sold do as it plesed hym. fyerabras al astoned of the stroke replenysshed of grete wrath with his swerd named plouraunce came wyth a course vpon olyuer, gaf hym a stroke(Note: *Ed. stcoke*.) vpon his helme so sarply that he trenched moo than vc maylles, and hurte euyl hys hors and smote of the spore of his foot a parte of ys thye, wheroute the blode ranne habundantly the swerde of fyerabras was al bloody: of whiche stroke olyuer was moeued troubled that he had fallen ne had hys sadel haue been, For he was bowed afterward(Note: "he was bowed afterward:" Fr. *par derriere*.) that he was al to broken. And his hors began to halte of the stroke whan he was comen to ym self wyth an hye voys began to crye: "O lord god, my creatour, o what an euyl stroke haue I receyued! O vyrgyn marye, moder of Ihesus, haue pyte of me! For ouer fyersly cutteth the swerde of thys paynym. yeue me grace that I may ones haue hym:" and made vpon hym self the sygne of the crosse. after fyerabras sayd to hym: "Olyuer, by Mahoun my god, wyth thys stroke I maad the aferde: now mayst thou wel fele how I can playe,(Note: "playe:" the regular technical term for fencing or fighting with swords. Thus the *Catholicon Anglicum* has: "a Bucler plaer, *gladiator*; a Bucler playnge, *gladiatura*. Þ^e Swerde y^ebucler (bukiller A.) playnge, *gladiatura* ." In the *Ancren Riwle*, p. 212, we have the expression "*pleieð* mid sweordes." See further in my notes in the *Catholicon* .) I haue no meruaylle though thou commaunde the to thy god, but I am euyl contente that I haue hurte the ouer sore with þe stroke. Neuertheles be sure that thou salt not see the sonne goo to reste for thou begynnest now to chaunge colour and thy fyerce manere: neuertheles I am contente that thou retorne, and that shall be for the the best tofore thou knowe more fully my strengthe: for I warne the of one thyng that whan I see my blood yssue out of my body thenne doubleth my myght and my strengthe. And I wote wel that charles loueth the not moche whan he sendeth the to me, yf he had lodged the in a

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

fayre bedde whyte setes thou haddest been moche better." whan Olyuer herde hym so saye he was replenysshed with a feruent courage began to lyfte vp hys heed and sayd: "O Paynym, dysmesured al day thou vauntest the for to brynge me to thende of my dayes. I praye to god almyghty that he wyl reioye(*Note: "reioye:" Fr. resioyr.*) my courage. kepe the wel, I deffye the! we haue ouer long pleted." vpon these wordes they ranne to—gydre, smytyng meruayllously eche other vpon their helmes in suche wyse that boucles, naylles, and crochettes, precious stones, or faueryes, and floures been hewen, broken, and flowen to the grounde. the fyre yssued oute largely, making grete bruyt with the swerdes vpon their harnoys. In this whyle Charles was in grete medytacyon and thought that the quarele of Olyuer was trewe and Iuste and that god ought to preserue hym, and whan he thought that Olyuer myght deye As Inpacyent of a perfayte fayth he sayd: "O glorious god, for whome we take payne, I praye the to conserue oliuer that he be not slayn ne taken. For I swere by the soule of my fader that yf he be now slayn of thys paynym that neuer in fraunce in ony chirche shal clerke ne preest be reuested ne enhabyted, but I shal do brenne monasteryes, chyrches, aulters crucefyxes." "Alas," sayd Duc naymes, "Syr kyng, leue these wordes vayne and ydle, praye god for Olyuer that he be in his ayde for hys holy mercy." Al thys whyle perseuerd the ij champyons fyghtyng and smytyng eche on other in suche maner that Fyerabras wyth hys swerde brake the cercle of Olyuers helme and made hym falle on hys vysage, and hys hors had be slayn yf he had not lepte a syde. and Olyuer was hurte in hys body and specyally in the breste and had thenne loste soo moche of hys blood that he was moche feble, whyche was no merueylle, seen that he had resysted ageynst the moost terryble man that euer was borne of moder.

How Olyuer made his prayer to god' whan he felte hym hurte: capitulo xj

Olyuer the noble erle beyng in this malancolye of the grete woundes that he had in hys body took his recomforte sayeng in this manere: "O glorious god, cause begynnyng of al that is aboue vnder the fyrmamente, which for your owne playser fourmed our fyrst fader Adam and for hys companye gauest vnto hym Eue, by whome al humayn generacyon is conceyued, gyuyng to them lycence to ete al maner fruytes reserued onely one, of whyche Eue by the moeuyng of the serpent caused Adam to ete, wherfore they loste paradys, by the seductyon of the fendes of helle many haue ben deceyued dampned: wherof ye had pyte of the perdycon of the world and came for to take flesshe humayn in the wombe of the glorious vyrgyn marye by thannuncyacion of the holy Aungel Gabryel, and were borne as it pleased you. And anone after the thre kynges camen to adoure make obeysaunce and wyth golde, encence, and myrre made to you their presentes. After for you herodes made to be slayne many chyl dren, whiche now been in loye permanable. And whan ye were in age by you determyned ye went in the world prechyng to your frendes. Thenne afterward by thenuyous Iewes ye were hanged on the crosse, in whiche so hangyng longyus the knyght by the Induction of the Iewes percyd your syde; whan he byleued in you wesshe hys eyen with your precious blode he recouerd his syt fayre clere cryed you mercy wherby he was saued. After by your frendes ye were layed in the holy sepulture: the thyrd day after aroos and took ageyn lyf and descended in to helle, And took out Adam and Eue and al them that were worthy to haue paradys. And the day of your meruayllous ascencyon ye ascended in to heuen in the presence of al your apostles. Thus my god, my maker, as thys is trouthe and I byleue it verayly and fermly, be ye in my comforte ageynst thys myscreaunte that I may vaynquysshe hym in suche wyse that he may be saued."*(Note: ll. 7–32. Caxton carefully distinguishes between you and ye: the former never being used for the nominative.)* And this said he blessyd hym with his swerde in making the sygne of p^e crosse in the name of god the holy trynyte, and smote his hors vpon the hope of the helpe of god. and Fyerabras sayd to hym lawhyng: "Olyuer, fayre frende, I praye the that thou hyde not fro me the oryson that thou hast said now, for by my god termagaunt I wold gladly here it." "Now wold god of heuen," sayd Olyuer, "that thou were in suche grace that thou sholdest byleue it also fermly as I doo, For I assure the I sold loue the thenne as moche as I doo Roulland."

And Fyerabras ansuerd to hym: "by my god Mahoun and Termagaunt, thou spekest now of a moche grete folye?"

How after a grete bataylle Olyuer conquerd' the bawme dranke therof at hys ease, and how he fyl to therthe whan hys hors was slayn: capitulo xij

Fyerabras beyng wroth of the wordes of oliuer in grete Ire sayd to hym: "kepe the wel fro me, for I deffye the!" "I am redy," sayd Olyuer, "for to god I commaunde me." so thenne they recountred to—gyder so sarply and so hard strokes they gaf that the fyre myt haboundantlye be seen sprynge oute of theyr harnois. Theyr horses bowed vnder hem and the erthe trembled of the bruyt in the medowe vnder mormyonde. Fyerabras took hys swerde in hys honde and smote Olyuer there as he was euyl hurte in the breste vnder the pappe, of that stroke the eyen torned in hys heed, And had hys face alle chaunged. And thenne ageyn he cryed on god and on the virgyn marie that he wold saue his soule. Fyerabras by grete curtosye sayd to hym: "Olyuer, vnderstonde me, descende doun surely and goo take of the bawme and drynke at thyn ease, and anone thou shalt be al guarysshed and hole, and thenne mayst thou the better defende the ageynst me and thou salte recoure newe strengthe." But olyuer for noo thyng that he coude do though he sold dye he wold not, For by trewe fighting he wold haue it. And anone came that one ageynst that other and smyten in suche wyse that Fyerabras was hurte daungerously, For olyuers swerde entred in to his thye an halfe foot depe, and of the blood that yssued oute alle the grasse was reed. And whan he sawe hym so hurte he dranke of hys bawme and was anone al hool, wherof olyuer was moche sorouful, by cause therof he coude make none ende of thys paynym. And the frensshe men that saw this made to god their prayers deuoutly that he wolde conserue that day Olyuer, And in especyal Charlemayn whiche emong al other loued hym moast entyerly. But whan Olyuer sawe the paynym al hole for the bawme so comforted, by the ayde of god he came to hym and smote hym vpon the helme soo harde that the stroke descended vpon the sadel cutte the corde by whyche the barylles were bounden and fastned, and the hors of fyerabras was aferde of the stroke and made a lytel course(*Note*: "made a lytel course:" ran away a little distance.) by the playsyr of god. Thenne Olyuer or the paynym toke ony hede bowed to the grounde and took vp the barylles dranke at hys ease and largely, anon he was al hole reconfermed in newe strengthe,(*Note*: There is no mention of Oliver's drinking any of the balm in *Sir Ferumbras* or the *Sowdan*. See Dr. Hausknecht's note to the latter, l. 1191.)thought that yf by aduenture fyerabras were more hurte by hym and myght ageyn haue hys barylles that in thende it myght euyl happe and come to hym. wherfore he beyng nyghe vnto a grete ryuer took the barylles threwe them therin whyche were anone sonken(*Note*: "beyng nyghe vnto a grete ryuer, &c." See note 1 in Introduction to *Sir Ferumbras*, p. xii.). And as it is redde at alle the festes of saynt Iohan these ij barylles ben sewed aboue the water euydently. whan fyerabras sawe that the barilles were loste all most for angre he was oute of hys mynde by grete reproche sayd to Olyuer: "O euyl man that thou arte, thou hast loste my barylles whyche were more worth than al the golde in the world: but I promyse the that or it be euen they sal to the ben dere solde, For I sall not cesse tyl I haue smyton of thy heed:" and thys sayeng he came ayenst hym, but Olyuer as he that doubteth hym not soo moche as he dyd tofore eschewed hym not but put ym at the defence wyth his selde to auoyde the stroke. Neuertheles Fyerabras smote hym so hard þat hys helme was desmaylled broken, but he was not hurte, the stroke descended so inpytuously þat he cutte asondre the necke of oliuers hors, he(*Note*: "he:" the omission of the subject pronoun frequently causes ambiguity when two persons are spoken of: the he here, of course, refers to Oliver's horse.) fyl to grounde and thenne was Olyuer on fote. but a grete myracle it was of the hors of fyerabras that maad no semblaunte to renne vpon hym as he had ben taught, lyke as I haue sayd byfore, but helde hym styлле aboue(*Note*: "aboue:" Fr. *oultre*, i. e. out of, away from.) hys propre custome.

How Fyerabras and' Olyuer foughten togyder afote merveyllously, and' of the prayer that Charles maad' for Olyuer: capitulo **xijj** [correction; sic = viij]

(*Note*: For number of chapter given as "viij" read "xijj.")

Moche sorouful were the frensshe men whan they sawe Olyuer on fote, and wold haue armed hem for to socoure hym, But Charles wold not consente for to mayntene hys honour hys trouthe. And thenne kyng Charles kneled doun to therthe maad his prayer to god that he wolde comforte Olyuer whyche was thus dyspourueyed of his hors. whan Olyuer sawe hym self on fote he was moche sorouful came a foure paas nyghe vnto Fyerabras, and sayd to

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

hym: "o kyng of Alexandrye, thou hast borne the foule this day ageynst me. In the mornynge thou hast so moche preyed thy self that thou hast sayd yf v knyghtes came ageynst the thou woldest abyde and conquere them, and thou knowest that the kyng that sleeth an hors ought to haue no parte of therytage." Fyerabras ansuerd: "I knowe wel that thou sayest trouthe, but I dyd it not wyth my wylle. Neuertheles to thende that thou be not euyl contente wyth me I sal descende doun of my hors sal gyue to the my hors pomeld: And I promyse the thou salt be well horsed. And knowe thou that neuer in my lyf I was so abassed as whan he sawe the at erthe that he strangled the not, for I neuer put man to the erthe and thys hors present but that anone he was by hym slayn dede." Olyuer ansuerd: "I promyse the that I sal neuer take thyn hors but yf he be first by me conquered and Iustly wonne." wherupon fyerabras was soo moche noble that for the valyaunce of Olyuer sayd: "Certheyn for the noblesse that I knowe in the I wyl do that I neuer dyd for man:" and sprange of his hors stode a-foote was contente to fyght ayenst hym a foote, by-cause he had no hors of hys owne. and the sayd fyerabras was moche heyer than Olyuer. and by one accorde they Iusted afoote that one ayenst that other so meruayllously that it was wonder that bothe tweyne remayned not in the felde a-swoune of the trauaylle that they toke. Thus contynueng the bataylle which coude take none ende they spaken many reproches and despytous wordes that one of theym vnto other. The kyng Charles seyng al thys had grete pyte on Olyuer. Thenne the Erle Reyner, fader of Olyuer, whyche was moche sorouful came kneled at the feet of Charles and sayd: "O noble emperour, in thonour of god take remors of my sone whome I see lykly anone to dye. Atte leste make prayer to Ihesus our maker that he be in ayde to hym that I may see hym nyghe to me in helthe." Incontynent Charles seyng thys sayd: "O lord god, yf ye suffre that Olyuer be ouercome and that my ryght at thys tyme be loste and defyled, I make auowe that al crystyante sal be destroyed. I shal not leue in Fraunce chirche ne monasterye, ymage ne aulter." after kneled doun with bothe his knees(*Note: Ed. kueses.*) to the grounde prayed in this manere: "My creatour, whyche for our sauacyon was borne of the glorious vyrgyn marie in bethleem, as I wel by-leue, that of your glorious byrth al the world was enlumyned, whiche abode in thys world ful xxxij yere more, made atte begynnyng Adam and Eue, of whom we ben comen, that was in paradys tenestre(*Note: "tenestre:" read "terrestre."*) a place moche delectable. And there by you were alle fruytes abandoned to them except one onely, whyche was of knowyng good euyl, as it plesed you to ordeyne: of whiche adam ete was dysobeysant, for whom to the reparacion of his misdede for to redeme hym fro eternal captyuyte vs also ye were contente to take the deth in the tree of the crosse, after that the traytour(*Note: Ed. traycour.*) Iudas solde you for xxx pens: on a friday ye were payned your handes feet mortally naylled, crowned with a moche sharpe crowne of thornes: and after Longyus(*Note: "Longyus." On the legend of Longinus, see Prof. Skeat's notes to P. Plowman, C. xxi. 82 90.*) smote you in the ryght syde to the hert, whiche was blynde after that he had leyd on hys eyen of your precyous blood he sawe moche clerely: after ye descended in to helle toke out your frendes, sythe aroos fro deth to lyf, tofore al your apostles ye ascended in to heuen lefte for your lyeutenaunt saynt Peter thapostle in erthe; and ordeynest baptesme for the regeneracyon of vs and to make vs crysten for to haue saluacyon. O lord, as alle thys is truthe and that I byleue it stedfastly, so on thys day be thou(*Note: "thou." Here the singular pronoun is used rightly as in a prayer addressed directly to our Lord: in the previous lines you and ye were used, as they were not of the character of a prayer.*) in ayde and socoure vnto Olyuer for to preserue hym that he be not slayn ne vaynquysshed." He thys sayeng other deuoute wordes in hys secrete oratorye Our(*Note: Ed. Out.*) lord sente to hym an aungel fro heuen whyche sayd to hym: "O Charles, Emperour of noblesse, knowe thou for trouthe that I am sente from god for to say to the that thou doubte no thyng of Olyuer, for wythout faylle he sal wyne the bataylle; though it be late, but he sal vaynquysshe the paynym." thys sayd, the aungel departed and charles thanked god deuoutelye for hys glorious medytacyon.(*Note: "for hys glorious medytacyon." In the original French, par glorieux meditacion. "Neuertheles:" Fr. touttefois.*) Neuertheles after many bataylles bytwene fyerabras and Olyuer maad, and grete menaces by grete furour, wylling to haue gyuen to Olyuer a grete stroke oute of mesure. But Olyuer whyche sawe the stroke comyng deuaunced hym in suche wyse that he gaf two euyl strokes to Fyerabras, wherof Fyerabras was passyng angry vpon Olyuer, and Olyuer on hym, so that bothe were ryt actyf neuer to departe tyl that one of them were vaynquysshed and destroyed. at that tyme Olyuer was soo coueytous in smytyng(*Note: "soo coueytous in smytyng:" Fr. conuoiteulx et affoibly.*) that his honde in whiche he helde hys swerde was a-slepe(*Note: "a-slepe:" i. e. numbed. Fr. endormie.)* and swollen for the payne that he had of smytyng, and he desyryng to smyte hys enemye at vtteraunce(*Note: "at vtteraunce:" a oultrance : comp. p. 62, l. 18.*) hys suerde flewe a-ferre fro hym out of his hande, wherof he was sore moeued and abasshed and it was no meruaylle and moche courageously ranne for to

How after a grete bataylle Olyuer conquerd' the bawme dranke therof at hys ease, and how he fyl to ~~the~~ the w

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

take vp his swerde, And layed hys selde on hys hede for to preserue it. But not wythstondyng the paynym smote hym twyes so myghtyly that he brake hys selde in dyuers places and hys hauberke, so that he was sore astonyed for that tyme And doubted soo moche the paynym that he durst not take hys swerde: and moche sodeynlye the frensshe men which sawe so Olyuer dyspourueyed of his swerde armed them anone and were in purposos to renne vpon the sarasyn for to socour olyuer. but Charles wold not consente that any man sold goo sayeng to them that god is almyghty for to saue and mayntene hym in hys good ryght, for yf he had not gaynsayed it more than xiiij thousand men were thenne redy for to haue rescowed hym. and notwythstondyng al thys the paynym dyd but laughe said to Olyuer: "In trouthe, Olyuer, I haue opteyned vpon the a lytel of myn entente, but wherfore darst not pou take thy swerde I knowe now wel that thou art ynoug vaynquysshed sythe that thou art so aferde that thou darst not stoupe for all the tresour of the world. and I am wel contente for to apoynte wyth the (Note: "for to apoynte wyth the:" Fr. *te faire vne pache*.) that is that thou renye the fayth that thou holdest, the baptesme that thou hast receyued the god in whom thou byleuest, and for whome thou hast had al thys payne, byleue in Mahoun, my god ful of bounte, I sal suffre the to lyue more ouer I sal be contente to gyue to the my sister to wyf to whom thou salte be rychely maryed. Hyr name is Florypes, the fayrest of moder borne, after we shal conquere France or thys yere be paste, And of one of the royames I sal crowne the kyng." Olyuer ansuerd to hym: "Paynym, thou spekest to me of grete folye, for god forbede that euer I sold be of entencion to forsake my god, whyche hath created fourmed me, and his holy sacrements which haue been establysshed for my (Note: *Ed. fo rmy*.)sauacyon, for to byleue in mahoun and in thy goddes ful of abusyon: whiche haue neyther strengthe ne vertue but cause of dampnacyon." Fyerabras sayd to hym, "by mahoun my god, thou art alwaye moche obstynat that ne for payn ne for torment thou wylt not denye thy fayth, of one thyng which is more grete thou (Note: *Ed. thon*.) mayst wel auaunte the. For neuer was I of persone so trauailed ne greued as I am of the. Thou oughtest wel to be praysed. I am contente that thou take thy swerde hardyly and surely for withoute competent wepen thou mayst not preuaylle ne more than a woman." Olyuer answerd: "Paynym, I can not say the contrarye but that thou offrest to me seruyce and bounte, but for the valewe of x thousand marke of golde I wyl not take it, ne for to deye therefore. For yf I had recouerd my swerde by thy curtosye And it happed that thou were vnder my pyssaunce and thou thenne demaundest of me amytye frendsyp thenne I put the to deth it sold to me be vylete (Note: "vylete:" Fr. *vilte*.) and reproche. And at thys tyme my lyf and my deth be in the wylle of god to whom I haue gyuen my self ouer. But and yf I may wynne my swerde thou salt bye it dere here deye, For other thyng sal thou not haue." "By my fayth," sayd Fyerabras, "thou art moche surquydrous glorious, wherfore be thou sure that shortely thou shalt be confused descomfyte and matte." (Note: "matte." In the original the same. See *Sir Ferumbras*, ll. 2506, 2590, and Glossary.)

How at thys bataylle Fyerabras was vanquysshed' by Olyuer after that he had' recouerd' one of the swerdes of fyerabras: capitulo **xiiij [correction; sic = viiiij]**

Whan Fyerabras herde that oliuer was so fyers of fayt and of courage he had grete meruaylle. For he wold not haue hys swerde but yf he myght by Iuste warre conquere it, wherfore the paynym dysmesurably came ageynst hym and helde in hys hande plorance hys swerde. Thenne it was no meruayle though olyuer was aferde to abyde hys enemye he beyng dyspourueyed of swerde of selde, For that was broken in two partyes. but as it played to god he loked besyde hym sawe the hors of fyerabras and on the arson of the sadel were ij other swerdes of which I haue spoken afore. And anone Olyuer ranne ryght quyckely and took one of the swerdes which was named baptesme, whyche had the blade moche large and shone meruayllously, after came ageynst the paynym put tofore parte of hys selde suche as was lefte and whan he was nyghe hym he began to say: "O kyng of Alexandrye, now is tyme to compte. For I am pourueyed of your swerde of which I sal make you wroth kepe you wel from me for I haue deffyed you." Thenne whan Fyerabras sawe it and had herde hym so speke anone began to chaunge colour and sayd: "O baptyem, good swerde, I haue kepte the many a day for one of the beste that euer henge by my syde or by ony mans that is lyuyng." And after behelde olyuer sayeng: "By my god Mahoun, I knowe the a man of grete fyerste. I wold that thou woldest take thyn owne swerde and late me haue myn and thenne late vs fyght as we haue begonne." "by my hede," sayd Olyuer, "that sal neuer be by my wylle, for tofore I make ony pacte with

How at thys bataylle Fyerabras was vanquysshed' by Olyuer after that he had' recouerd' one of the swerdes of

the I sal assaye and approue thys swerde vpon thy persone. kepe the wel fro me For ouer long haue we sermoned." Tys sayeng other thynges Olyuer came as a lyon hungry ayenst fyerabras smote hym fyrst, but he myt not attayne hym on the hede but that he recountred first the selde of the paynym, whyche he brake and al to-frusshed euy!(*Note: "whyche he brake and al to-frusshed euy!" Fr. *cassa et rompi mallement.*) that the half flewe in the felde. Thenne fyerabras was sore aferde of that stroke For aboue alle thys the swerde wyth that stroke entred nygh half a foot within therthe. Thenne olyuer blessyd hym that had forged that swerde and so wel tempred, and after many menaces rygorous they were in partye descouerd of theyr helmes. And whan Olyuer sawe the Paynym Fyerabras in the vysage fyers and courageous he sayd: "O lord god of heuen, maker of heuen of erthe, that thys paynym is noble and ful of cruelte. Now wold god that Charles had ym in his power and yf he wold be baptysed Rolland and I sold be hys pryue felowes. O glorious vyrgyn marie moder of god, praye our lord Ihesu Cryste thy sone that he gyue grace to thys sarasyn that he may byleue in the cristen fayth, for by hym it may be moche enhaunced." Fyerabras ansuerd in thys manere: "Olyuer, leue suche wordes: telle me yf thou wylt fyght like as thou hast enterprysed." "ye," sayd olyuer, "kepe the wel fro me for I deffye the," and ranne vpon hym:(*Note: "and ranne vpon hym:" Fr. *et se coururent.* The succeeding passage is awkwardly expressed in the translation. The original reads: *et fut premierement frappe Oliuer sur son escu par telle fierte, qu'au prez le poinz de Oliuer a mis en pieces son escu,* which is not much better. The *he*, of course, is Ferumbras.) and Olyuer was smyton fyrst vpon his selde by suche fiersnes that he smote his selde in pyeces nyghe to hys fyste, and it was meruaylle that he cut it not of: wherfore Fyerabras sayd that he had put hym in suche caas that he sold not longe lyue in thys world. Olyuer sayd noo worde but came with his swerde ayenst the paynym Fyerabras moche furyously. Thenne the paynym that sawe þ^e stroke come threwe hys shelde ayenst olyuer wherfore anone it was quartred, and was so astoned that the eyen in hys heed were al troubled of the payne and the fyre was seen sprynge oute of the swerdes and seldes moche habundantlye. and thus in smytyng fyerabras sayd in this manere: "now is the houre come that thou shalt neuer haue ayde of thy god Ihesus in whome thou byleuest, but that anone thou shalt be deed sythe thou felest thy self ouercomen. And Olyuer anone ansuerd: "Ihesus is wel myghty for to sewe hys puyssaunce. But anone thou salt knowe that Mahoun ne Termagaunte sal not mowe ayde the ne be so myghty but that thou salte be deed, I shal wel gyue the knowleche." And herupon came that one vpon that other. And olyuer was smyton on the helme al vnto the flesshe in suche wyse that al that the swerde araught it sare and passed thorough, thenne he sayd to olyuer: "I swere to the by my god that I haue wel araught the and smyton. Neuer shal charles ne Rolland see the be thou wel sure." Olyuer ansuerd: "O Fyerabras of alexandrye, be not thou so proude for or I departe fro the I shal rendre the dede or vaynquysshed, god graunte to me that whyche I haue alwaye desyred!" And therupon eche smote other so merueylously that the bodyes of them bothe swette for anguysshe and payne. Fyerabras smote olyuer vpon the helme soo harde that the stroke came to the flessch, and yf god had not wrought he had be slayn at that tyme. wherfore Olyuer as a man enraged came ayenst the paynym the sarasyn lyfte on hyghe hys selde so that he was al dyscouerd vnder the arme and hys flanke was there vnarmed. Olyuer was wyse took good hede and came lyghtly smote fyerabras in hys flanke so myghtyly contynued in suche wyse that he thrested his swerde in one of hys flankes wel depe, hys swerde hym self the place was alle bybled of the blood. Thus was Fyerabras hurte in suche manere that almost hys bowellys yssued oute of his bely, For thenne at that stroke olyuer employed al his strengthe for to make an ende of the bataylle so longe foughten.**

How fyerabras beyng vaynquysshed' byleued' in god', and' how he was borne by Olyuer, And' how Olyuer was assaylled' of the sarasyns and tormented': capitulo xv

After that the Paynym was smyton and hurte mortally as I haue sayd, And he seyng that he myght nomore resyste ayenst Olyuer, by the vertu of god he was enlumyned in suche wyse that he had knowleche of the errour of the paynyms and lyfte vp hys eyen vnto heuen and began to escrye the holy trynyte and the grace of the holy ghost. And after loked on Olyuer and sayd to hym: "O noble Olyuer valyaunt knyght, in thonour of god on whome thou byleuest and to whome I consente I crye the mercy and requyre the that I dye not tyl I be baptysed yelden vaynquysshed vnto Charles the Emperour whyche so moche is redoubted. For I sal byleue in the crysten fayth sal yelde the relyques for whyche ye be assemblyd and haue taken soo moche payne. And I swere to the that yf by

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

thy defaute I dye sarasyn I make the culpable of my dampnacyon, And yf thou take not me in to thy garde I sal lose my blood. Thou salt see me deye tofore thyn eyen wherfore in the honour of god haue pyte on me." Olyuer had so moche compassyon of hym for hys soor that he sore wepte, and after he layed hym in the sadowe vnder a tree and there bounde his mortal woundes in suche wyse that he stanchyd hys bledyng. And after the paynym prayed hym that it myght plese hym to bere hym awaye For hym self myght not goo. but whan Olyuer sawe that he was so heuy he sayd that it was not to hym possyble to bere hym. Fyerabras enforced(*Note: "enforced:"* exerted. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, 782 "*Pan Firumbras enforcede* hym þer to arise vp—on ys fete.")hym self moche came nyghe to hym, "O noble and redoubted Erle Olyuer, in the honour of god lede me to charles or I be dede for I am nyghe at myn ende, for al my body bledeth. take that hors and mounte theron and come as nyghe to me as thou may and yf I may lye thwart tofore the vpon the sadel thou mayst lede me; take my swerde by thy syde. Now hast thou foure that been moche worthe. and hye and depresso the, For thys day in the mornyng I lefte in the wode that thou there seest here by fyfty thousand men whyche been al my subgettes, comanded them that none sold moeue tyl I were retorned fro the bataylle." Whan Olyuer vnderstood hym he was al afrayed and abasshed for fere, but not wythstondyng he sayd: "Syr kyng, sythe that it plese you I am contente," took hym thwart the hors as it was sayd went forth on the waye in grete sorowe. And sodeynly departed out of the wode where as were the subgettes of Fyerabras a moche fyers paynym named bruyllant of Mommere. And after hym Sortybrant of nonymbres, and the kyng of Mantryble; after hym maradas, Pynan, Tenebras, wel fyfty thousand sarasyns after. whan Olyuer sawe theym come he smote the hors wyth the spores but the charge was so heuy that he myt not goo so faste as his enemyes came to hym. Whan the frensshe men sawe the paynyms come in so grete nombre anon lyghtely they armed them. And emonge other rolland, Gherard of mondydyer, Guyllam the scot, naymes of bauyere, Ogier, Rychard of normandye, Guy of bourgoyn, Geffroy lantiguy, Basyn, the duc Thyery of ardeyne, And Aubert, And semblably Reyner of genes fader of Olyuer faylled not. Olyuer saw alonge the medowe and sawe come to fore thother brullant of mommyere which rode on an hors as swyft as a grehounde and made grete bruyt emonge the other, For it semed as it had be thonder and tempeste; and bare in hys honde a faus dart(*Note: "a faus dart:"* Fr. *ung faulx dart*. Properly a hand-bill. See *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 966, and note "*falsarz an feperd dart*." The expression occurs again, p. 81, l. 28, below.) with a grete hede of stele square and sarpe whyche was alle enuenymed wyth the blood of a crapauld(*Note: "crapauld:"* Fr. *crapaulx*, a toad.) and was ryght daungerous. whan Olyuer sawe him he was al amoeued and abasshed and sayd to Fyerabras in thys manere: "Sir kyng, ye must needs descende; I may no ferther conduyte you, wherfore I am meruayllously sory and dysplaysaunt. For I knowe that I must nedes be oppressyd; ye see it wel. And yf they may attayne I sal be put to deth, And Charles shal neuer see me whyche shall be to hym grete dyscomforte." Thenne anone Fyerabras cryed with an hye voys:(*Note: Ed. veys.*) "O noble Olyuer, wyl ye now leue me? Ye haue conquerd me, to you I am yeuen and yelden. it sal not be reputed noblesse determyned whan I am youres and ye forsake me. Alas poure sorouful and caytyf that I am, yf I deye paynym what shal come of me? Virgyn marie, moder of god, haue pyte on me vnworthy that I am to retorne me to you!" And after he sayd to Olyuer: "I am conquerd by the and haue promysed to the that I sal be baptyesd. Yf thou leue me thou oughtest lytel to be preysed." Olyuer ansuerd: "Fyerabras, thou spekest as a knyght. But I auowe to god and to the courte of heuen that I sal not leue the, I sal take the bataylle in honde for the and sal deffende the as longe as I sal be on lyue: thou mayst wel truste therto." there vpon he took the hauberk of the sarasyn and wyth suche as he myt haue he armed hym, prestly he abyllid hym and put on his heed an hatte of fyne stele, and helde hys swerde drawen named haultclere, wyth whiche he coude wel helpe hym. herupon came anone brullant wyth his faus darte atteyned Olyuer in the breste gaf hym an euyl stroke so that the dart brake. thenne said fyerabras: "Syr Olyuer, ye haue doon ynough for me, For ye be hurte. late me descende doun and laye me a—parte out of the waye to thende that I be not defouled of these sarasyns, ne taken and destroyed." Therof had Olyuer grete compassyon layed Fyerabras in the sadowe of a pynapple tree(*Note: "a pynapple tree:"* a pine or fir—tree. The *Catholicon Anglicum* gives: "a Pyne tre (A Pyne Appyltre A.); *pinus (pinum fructus eius A.)*." *Apple* was the ordinary word for the cones of the pine or fir. Lyte, Dodoens, p. 769, speaking of the pine, says: "his fruite is great Boulleans or bawles of a browne chesnut colour, and are called *pine—apples*." See other instances in my note in the *Catholicon*.) ferre out of the waye. and whan he wold haue fledde he sawe aboute hym wel x thousand sarasyns and sayd: "Alas! god Ihesus, my creatour, thou knowest myn entencyon. I requyre the to gyue me grace that I deye not at thys tyme present vnto the tyme that for thexaltacion of thy fayth I may be wyth Rolland my felawe:" in the name of Ihesus drewe out haultclere and

How fyerabras beyng vaynquysshed' byleued' in god', and' how he was borne by Olyuer, And' how Olyuer was

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

came in to the waye, the first that he recountred was the sone of the grettest lord that was there, and gaf hym suche a stroke that he clefte hym to the breste and he fyl doun dede. Olyuer was abyllle delyuer, and took fro hym hys selde whyche was al newe: for in the bataylle tofore maad he had loste hys, also he had his spere lete hys hors renne emonge the myscreautes. And atteyned at the fyrst stroke Clorgys smote hym vnto the hert. And in retornyng he slewe thre sarasyns they ranne tofore hym as seep tofore the wulf whiche is hongry. Thenne came on hym marabas, Turgys, Sortybrant of conymbres, and the kyng Margaris, and they cryed with an hye voys to—gydre: "by Mahoun our god, thou frensshe man thou shalt not escape vs; kepe the wel for by vs thou shalt deye!" And thenne cam Olyuer emonge his enemyes and smote and slewe on al sydes. And the saresyns smote on hym in suche wyse that it was grete meruaylle that he was not slayne and ouercomen but by force of(*Note: Ed. and.*) sotte and of strokes(*Note: "by force of shotte and of strokes."* Altered on the authority of the original, which reads: "*a force de coup et de trais.*") hys hors was slayn vnder hym. And he beyng on the erthe as sone as he myght he aroos and beyng afoot sette hys selde tofore hym whyche he had goten, and helde fast haultclere whyche was alle hys comforte for to socoure hym. And alwaye whome he raught fyl doun and was slayn. It is not redde in ony book that euer ony man so hurt as he was bare hym so wel and dyd so grete portemente of armes.

How Olyuer was taken blynfeld' pyteously, myght not be socoured' by the Frensshe men: ca. xvj(*Note: Ed. xvij.*)

Olyuer was al allone on fote emonge the sarasyns ageynst whome he made grete resystence meruayllous: but it is not a thyng possyble that he myght escape fro theyr handes, for wyth glaues, with swerdes and with faus dartes(*Note: "faus dartes."* See p. 79, l. 18, and note.) of yron they pressyd hym so sore that hys selde was perced in moo than xxx places: whan hys hauberk was broken perced wyth foure sharpe dartes they perced and wounded hym in his body meruayllously. Wherefore by veray force for feblesse he fyl to the erthe there they took hym moche outerageously, and after blynfelde hys eyen bonde hym straytely soo that he myt not see, ne wyst not where he was they sette hym vpon a good hors bonde hym surely. And whan thys valyaunt olyuer was thus dyspourueyed fro al helpe, fro al syt, fro al hope, and fro al comforte, it is good to wete(*Note: "it is good to wete:"* this does not at all convey the meaning of the original, which runs: *sans le dire se peult entendre.*) that he was in grete desplaysaunce, For he knewe not what they wold doo wyth hym. Thenne wyth an hye voys by a compassyon of hert he sayd: "O Charlemayn kyng of noblesse Emperour of valure, where art thou now knowest thou not where I am? seest thou not what I do? remembrest not me, Noble felawe Rolland? thou art all a slepe. am I deaf or how I may not here the? is there none of you crysten that remembreth me?" These and suche other complayntes makyng(*Note: The omission of the pronoun before makyng makes the sentence rather awkward.*) the kyng Maradas sayd to hym: "Frensshe man, whatsomeuer thou be thou spekest of folye, For I sal not ete tyl thou be hanged." These sarasyns ranne wyth olyuer, hys eyen blynfelde and hys hondes straytly bounden, in the garde of four fals tyraunts. Thenne vpon thys in especyal came Rolland, Thyerry, al the peres charles hym self also, but thys was ouer late for to saue Olyuer. wyth grete cryes they cryed on god on al the sayntes of heuen. And wyth grete Ire Rolland smote Corsuble in the brest, Gherard of mondydyer came ayenst Turgys, Ogyer smote athenas, And Rychard Amancdys;(*Note: "Amancdys:"* Fr. *Amandis.*) Guy of bourgoyne atteyned brullant. There was none of the peres of fraunce but that ouerthrewe hys man and made so grete dyscomfyte of the sarasyns that they were al empessed to holde them to—gyders and to goo theyr waye, but the other paynyms that conduyted Olyuer wente alwaye forth. And in thys bataylle was slayn guyllam, gualtier, other ynow of valyaunte peple many other of the moyen people others, and laye on the grounde.(*Note: In the Sowdone it is Roland and Oliver that are captured: see Dr. Hausknecht's note to l. 1433.*) And gherard de mondydier, the sone of Duke Thyerry, and geffroy langeuyn they bonde dylygently to theyr horses rode awaye wyth them hastely. but whan charles sawe theym thus ladde for angre he loste almoost hys wytte, And wyth an hyghe voys cryed: "saue, kepe, and socoure the barons. O knytes desloyal, that ye be slowe! yf they lede awaye the barons neuer shal ye fare wel." whan the Frensshe men herde Charles thus moeued as enraged smote theyr horses wyth theyr spores and wente doun of a mountayn.(*Note: "wente doun of a mountayn."* In *Sir Ferumbras*, 984: "at aualyng of an hulle.") And there was Rolland fyrst that helde hys swerde durandall drawn for tauenge hym fyersly, and hym that he atteyned was sure to passe by the deth. For he was al enraged by cause that they ledde awaye his felowe Olyuer, smote a paynym

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

that he cleft hym to the myddle of hys body. at that tyme rolland bare hym myghtely: by cause of the multytude of the paynymys he myght not passe forth for to socoure the barons prysonners and chaced them more than v myle ferre coude not approche them. thenne were many good knyghtes deed, morfounded,(*Note*: "morfounded:" Fr. *morfondus*, lit. chilled, affected by cold.) and wery. And not wythstondyng Rolland sware that he wold neuer retorne tyl the barons of fraunce were taken fro the handes of theyr enemyes. But he myght not do it, For the nyght came on wyst neuer whyther to goo. The sarasyns that were tofore went fleying alwaye at theyr playsyr. Thys seyng Charles wyst not what he sold doo ne say, For he doubted that the paynymys made a watche a ryere garde for to close them, And therefore by force they must leue the felde in ryt grete dysplaysyr anguysshe; and so al they returned.

The second' partye of the second' book conteyneth xvij chapytres speketh of the tormente of the barons of fraunce, how they that were taken spaken to ballant thadmyral of spayne.

How Fyerabras was founden by Charles, and after was baptysed' and' heled' of his wonde: ca. primo

After that charles knew that he myght not haue ageyn Olyuer ne the other prysoners it was force to hym to retorne wyth hys people for the nyght was thenne to them greuouse; also in retornyng they fonde fyerabras vnder a tre languysshyng, to whom þ^ekyng said: O vnhappy paynym, I out wel to hate the for by the been my men prysonners and loste. thou hast take fro me oliuer one of the best byloued that I had emonge al thumayn creatures: ym þat hath be synguler to mayntene my good name. by the in the ende in stede of Ioye thou yeldest me sorowe." whan fyerabras vnderstode hym he sore syghed sayd: "O ryche emperour noble, the moost myghty of human lygnage, In thonour of god I crye the mercy pardone me. It is trouthe that Olyuer hath conquerd me, I shal not hyde it, and I haue promysed hym that I shal be crystned. I haue left forsaken al my goddes and yelde me to Ihesus the creatour of the world. And I requyre the yet that I may be baptysed, and yf I were heled of my woundes I shal enhance to my power the crysten fayth many sarasyns shal be maad crysten; and by my moyan the holy sepulcre the holy reliques shal be delyuerd, for whome ye take grete payne and trauaylle. And also I make an oth to you by god in whom I now byleue that I am more heuy sorry for Olyuer that noble knyght whiche is taken prysonner than I am for my body whyche is mortally wounded, by the grace of god we shal haue hym ones;(*Note*: "ones:" at some time or other.) wherfore conclude we that I be crystned, For yf I deye sarasyn it shal be to you reproche." And vpon thys Charles, whyche had grete compassyon on hym, made hym to be borne in to hys lodgyng by his barons. and whan they saw hym so hugely membred they al were abashed of his gretenes and largenes, for whan he was vnarmed he was one of the semelyest men that euer was. And al the Frensshe men gaf grete loes and honour to Olyuer that had foughten ouercomen suche a man; and as he was vnclouted partye of hys woundes opened and began to blede wherof hys hert faylled fyl down a–swoune, rolland anone lyfte hym vp. And in al haste they made redy a fonte, sente for tharche–bysshop Turpyn(*Note*: "Turpyn." For an account of this celebrated Knight–Bishop, see Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdone*, l. 1711.) and Naymes, which were moche Ioyous of this that the paynym sold be crystend. after that the baptesme was redy the godfaders gaf hym another name was named floren, (but as longe as he lyued he was called Fyerabras,) and thenne he was layed in a bedde honourable. And at the laste ende of hys dayes he was a saynt and god sewed for hym myracles, and is now called Saynt Floren of Roye. And thenne anone charles made hym to be vysyted by his medycynes surgyens wel expert, sercheden(*Note*: "sercheden:" compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 1093–4. "is wounde to *enserche* and saye.

At is heste þey wente þer–to softe gunne *taste* is wounde."

) al his woundes, and as god wolde they fonde none of his bowellys entamed ne hurt, wherfore the leches were sure for to delyuer hym al hole wythin ij monethes next after comyng. In makyng thys vysytacion the Emperour charles was present sayd to fyerabras: "yf now olyuer the other barons were here present tofore the we sold wel be contente." And charles was thenne al pencyf and heuy moche thynkyng vpon hys barons prysoners, but he maad no more semblaunte.

The second' partye of the second' book conteyneth xvij chapytres speketh of the tormente of the barons of fraunce

How Olyuer his felowes were presented' to ballant thadmyral and' cruelly passyoned in pryson: capitulo ij

The Sarasyns after they had the barons of fraunce tofore named for prysoners they taryed not but ranne tyl they came in to a ryche cytee named Agrymore; and at the entre of the sayd cyte they sowned and blewe vp trumpes makyng grete bruyt. whan ballant thadmyral,(*Note: "ballant thadmyral." Laban in the Sowdone throughout.*) fader of Fyerabras, sawe them he came vnto them fonde there brullant of mommyer, to whome he sayd: "O brullant my frende, telle to vs of your tydynges, how ye haue borne you in my warre and affayres. haue ye taken Charles the emperour whyche so moche is redoubted, his peres of fraunce be they dyscomfyted?" Brullant sayd to hym: "O syr admyral, the tydynges that I brynge you been alle otherwyse, and of lasse valewe than ye say. by Charles the kyng we haue been almoost defeated and dyscomfyted. For of hys puyssaunce it is a meruayllous thyng. Fyerabras your sone is with hym vaynquysshed by one of his barons and is made crysten, he was taken vaynquysshed dyscomfyted in loyal batayl without doying ony treson." whan thadmyral vnderstode this he fyl to therthe al in a traunse, And or he came ageyn to hys mynde it was a grete whyle for the sorowe that he had of hys sone. and whan he was releued he cryed wyth an hye voys: "O dolaunt vnhappy that I am! ha! poure caytyf! what sal bycome of me? O Fyerabras, my ryght dere sone and heyer, whyther art thou gone? Fro whens cometh thys trespaas? wherfore were thou taken whyche neuer in bataylle were wery ne had reproche? O what euyl tydynges been brought to me of the! yf he be crysten I am sorry that he lyueth: I had moche leuer that he were dysmembred and put to deth:" thenne as a man feble for sorowe fyl down to the grounde and cryed: "O brullant of mommyere, what is betyd of the noble kyng of Cordube and of my neuewe bruchart? sythe(*Note: "sythe." By using this word to render the original *puis*, Caxton has made the whole sentence almost unintelligible. It should run: "O brullant of mommyere, what is betyd of the noble kyng of Cordube and of my neuewe bruchart, and also of my sone fyerabras, the ledar and captayn of all?"*) my sone fyerabras the ledar and captayn of all, yf it be trewe that he be lost I sal smyte oute the brayne of Mahomet the god whiche hath promysed to me so moche good, to whome I haue gyuen my self and yolden." Thus sayeng alle in a rage he tormented hym self greuously vpon the grounde.(*Note: Ed. grouude.*) And whan thadmyral was a lytel coled of hys grete yre He demaunded of Brullant: "whiche is the knyght that hath vaynquysshed fyerabras my sone?" brullant answerd: "Syr admyrall, your sone hath be conquerd by yonde knyght:"(*Note: "knyght." Fr. *damoiseau* .*) in sewyng Olyuer whiche was so fayr wel formed membred had emonge al other his eyen bended. Now anone sayd thadmyral of spayn: "hye you brynge hym to me for I shal neuer ete tyl he be dysmembred." whan the frenssh men vnderstode that he wold do put Olyuer to deth, whiche was al theyr comferte, begonne to wepe greuously, olyuer whiche vnderstode it sawe them waylle he recomforted them sayeng, in suche manere that the sarasyns wyst not what they sayd, "My lordes my brethern, ye knowe our necessite, yf thadmyral myt know that we be of the peres of fraunce our lyues shal be sone termyned, for no thyng shal he take pyte of vs but that we shal deye shamefully. wherfor I praye you that we al say as I shal begynne:"(*Note: In the Sowdone the French knights tell their true names.*) to whome alle the other frensshe men prysonners dyd consente, wold say do lyke as he counceyllled them. after that thadmyral had comanded them to come tofore hym the paynymys vnarmed them bonde faste theyr hondes blynfelde theyr eyen, wherof they were moche greued daungerously hurt: anon thadmyral furiously demaunded olyuer: "þou frenssh man, beware that þou lye not but say to me the trouthe how thou arte named hyde it not." Olyuer ansuerd sayd: "syr, I am named eugynes, sone vnto a yeman(*Note: "yeman:" Fr. *vassal* .*) of poure lygnage, and was borne in lorayne cam on a tyme to the courte of Charles emperour, whiche gaf to me armes after adoubed me knyght: also my felowes that ye see tofore you ben poure knyghtes aduenturous haue enterprysed payne to serue our kyng, by cause þat by our seruyce we myt be auanced haue somme good guerdon rewarde." "O Mahoun," sayd thadmyral, "now I am wel deceyued. I supposed by my god that I had had fyue of the valyauntest erles of fraunce of the grettest, thought I had the kayes of fraunce by the moyen of these barons," anone called barbacas his chamberlayn and sayd to hym anone: "depresshe the, take these frensshe men and despoyle them bynde them harde to that pyler after brynge me my dartes wel sarped wyth yron, I shal shote at them and smyte hem at my playsyr." thenne aroos brullant(*Note: "brullant:" in the Sowdone, 1512, it is Floripas who advises her father to imprison the Frenchmen, not to slay them.*) sayd: "syr admyral, I praye you that at thys tyme that ye do not that enterpryse, for it shal not be wel doo. ye see wel that it is in the euentyde ouer late to do Iustyce, so ye myght be blamed, seen that your

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

seygnorye ne your lordes be not here now present. wherfore I praye you that at thys tyme ye do no thyng to them tyl to—morowe atte houre that eche man knowe it, your Iugement shal the better be approued. For I knowe wel that they haue deserued it wel euydently. And on that other syde yf charles the emperour wold yelde ageyn to you Fyerabras your sone wyth his good wylle ye myght semblably remyse to hym these frenssh men that ye now haue." "for your loue," sayd thadmyral, "I am contente," and sente for Brutamont whych was kepar of the pryson, and gaf to hym grete charge to kepe the frensshe men and that he be wel sure of them, and that he sette them in suche place for to lerne how they haue wrought folyly for to come it to hys kepyng.

Of the pryson wherin that the Frensshe men were lodged', And how they were vysyted by the fayre Florypes daughter of the admyral, and' of the beaute of hyr: ca. iij

After that ballant thadmyral of Spayne had commaunded that the Frensshe men were sette in greuous pryson brutamont the geayler made Olyuer his felawes to auale doun in to a pryson moche daungerous, whyche was so depe and strayt(*Note: "strayt:" Fr. estroite .*) in the grounde that no lyt myght be seen: in the which were put nourysshed serpentes, crapauldes, and other beestes venemous and detestable;(*Note: See note to p. 79, l. 20.*) in whyche place al stence was comprysed. and there passed a streme of the salte see whiche had hys entree wythout conduyt, by whiche water myght one passe whan the tyde was passed. or the kepar of the pryson went he blynfeld them set the dore aboute them, they beyng in this fylthe and stence anon the water came so habundantly that the poure frenssh men were in the water vnto their shoýdres. Thenne the woundes of olyuer began to smerte by cause of the salte water that it perced hys hert. ye may wel thynke the payne was grete, But in especyal of olyuer, which was hurt mortally in many places had grete necessaryte of remedye, he was in a place where al his paynes were renewed his woundes opened: for anon as he felte hym bayned in the salte water he fyl doun a swoune had be dede that tyme ne had be gherard de mondydyer who susteyned hym. ye may demaunde me how they were not drowned seeyng that the water grewe alwaye. ye shal vnderstonde that in that pryson of aduenture were two grete pylers wel xv fote hie vpon wiche by grete force they gate vp olyuer whic myt not helpe hym. whan olyuer was sette therupon in grete anguysshe he waylled sayd: "o poure man vnhappy put vnder by fals fortune!(*Note: "put vnder by fals fortune:" Fr. soubmis a faulx fortune.*) O Reyner my dere fader, for goddes sake what do ye? knowe ye where I am? thynke ye what I make?(*Note: "what I make": Fr. que ie fays, i. e. what I am doing, how I fare.*)knowe ye my sorowe? ye shal neuer see me." this sayeng other lamentable wordes of desolacyon the valyaunt man Gherard sayd to hym: "Syr oliuer, wayle nomore: vnto suche a knyght as ye be it apperteyneth not to make suche complainte. reioyce we our self traiste we in god, whych I wold it plesed that now we that be here were aboute at large al armed eche a good swerde in his hande onely: for I make a vowe to god that or we shold be put in to this pytte vaynquysshed I sold put to deth iijC sarasyns or moo." the frensshe men beyng on these pylers of marble afore sayd in suche wyse sayeng other wordes Florypes the syster of fyerabras daughter of thadmyrall herd them had grete compassyon of þ^e complayntes that Olyuer made. (*Note: Compare the description of Floripas as given in Sir Ferumbras, l. 5789, et seq.*)this douter was yonge not maryed, was wel comprysed of body; resonable of lengthe, whyt rody as rose in maye. hyr heyre was synyng as the fyne golde, hir vysage termyned in lytel of lengthe: and hyr chere lawhyng, hyr eyen clere as fawcon mued, sparklyng lyke ij sterres. the vysage had se deuysed moche egally, her nose strayt whiche was wel semely; the ij browes whiche were aboute the eyen appyeryng made shadowe; hyr chekys rounde, whyt as the flour de lys, a lytel tyssued with reed; vnder the nose was her mouth roundette, enhaunced in competent space, fro the chynne al wel proporcyoned to the remenaunte of the hede: with litel soldres strayte egalle: tofore aboute the gyrdle hir pappes were reysed after the facyon of ij apples, rounde and euen as the coppe of a litel montayn. And she was cladde wyth a robe of purple meruayllously ryche fylled pouldred with sterres of fyn golde, whyche was made of one of the fayrye,(*Note: "whyche was made of one of the fayrye:" Fr. faicte dune fae.*) it was of grete vertu for the persone that had it myght neuer be poysoned of herbe ne of venym. And florypes was so fayre wyth hyr abylluments that yf a persone had fasted iij or iiij dayes with out etyng, he myght see hyr he sold be replenysshed fylled. more ouer she bare a mantell whiche was made in the yle of colchos of a woman of the fayrye (there as Iason gate the fliese of golde, as it is redde in the destructyon of troye almoost at the begynnyng)(*Note: Caxton's translation of Raoul Lefevre's Jason was*

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

printed in 1477 (Blades). Several copies are still in existence.) whiche mantel had so swete an odour that it was meruaylle. wherfor of the beaulte of this damoyssel eche man meruaylled. as I haue said tofore she had wel herde the complaynt of the frensshe men in pryson in especyal of Olyuer of whome se had grete pyte, and departed fro hyr chambre with xij maydens hir subgettes, entred first in to the halle where as the paynyns were moche desolate for fyerabras wiche was taken many other grete lordes whiche were deed. whan the doughter(*Note: "doughter:" Fr. la fille.*) had demaunded tydynges they tolde yr þat hir broder fyerabras was taken vaynquysshed; wherfore anone se made a grete crye and syghed for anguysshe. thenne was al the sorowe renewed for hyr sake emonge them, whan she had cessayd a lytel of wepyng she sente anone for brutamont sayd to ym, "what be they that I haue herde speke in the pryson that ben so sorouful?" "Madame," said the porter, "they be frenssh men longyng to Charles the Kyng whiche neuer cesse to destroye our lawe, slee our peple, repreue our creaunce, and sette a nought our goddes: haue ben aydyng to slee Fyerabras your broder. emong whom ther is one of grete valure whyche is one of the best made men that euer was knowen, and hath ben so mygty that he conquerd in loyal batayl Fyerabras." Anone florypes had enuye to here hym speke(*Note: "Anone florypes had enuye to here hym speke:" Fr. eult enuie les oyr parler, i. e. had a great desire to hear them speak.*) sayd to brutamont: "I wyl speke with hem; come and opene the pryson, for I wyl knowe of theyr fayt." brutamont answerd and sayd: "Madame, ye shal pardonne me: ye may not see them by cause of the fylthe and dysoneste(*Note: "dysoneste:" Fr. inhonestete.*) of the place: it apperteyneth not to you. and on that other syde(*Note: "on that other syde:" i. e. on the other hand, again.*) your fader hath deffended me that noo persone shal approche the pryson. And I remembre me now wel that oftymes by a woman I have knowen somme samed deceyued." whan floripes vnderstood se was for angre almoost fro hyr self and sayd to hym: "O euyl glouton despytous, oughtest thou to yeue me suche langage? I promyse the that I shal make the to be payed sortly," called hyr chamberlayn whyche gaf to hyr a staffe, and she made semblaunte to opene the pryson and brutamont gaynsayed it, sodeynly she, seyng the porter wythstonde hyr, gaf hym suche a stroke on the vysage þat se made hys eyen flee oute of his heed, after he fyl doun there she slew hym threwe hym wythout knowyng of the sarasyns in to the pryson where the frensshe men were: wherof they were sore aferde and abasshed whan they herd hym, wenyng to them that it had be the deuyl which wold haue tempted deceyued them. Thenne anone florypes dyd doo lyght a torche dyd do open the pryson put in the lyght tofore hyr for to see the prysonners, cam nyghe to the pyler sayd to them: "O ye lordes, telle to me what ye ar how ye be named: hyde ye no thyng fro me." Olyuer answerd said: "My fayr lady, we ben of fraunce men of charlemayns,(*Note: "charlemayns:" evidently a misprint for "charlemayne," and not a genitive case.*) haue ben brout hyther to thadmyral, which hath comaunded vs to be here in thys cruel prison: moche better were it for vs that he dyd vs to be dysmembred dye than tabyde in this place." the curtoys florypes, not-withstandyng þat she was not crystened, had so grete noblesse so grete compassyon and said to them: "I promyse you that I shal put you out of this pryson, so that ye promette swere that ye shal helpe me to that that I shal say to you." Olyuer answerd: "therof, madame, I you assure, that ye shal fynde vs all suche by effecte as ye shal desyre, faythful trewe. For neuer were we other ne neuer shal be. be ye sure that we shall neuer fayle you as longe as we shall haue lyf in our bodyes, so þat we be furnyssed of armes been aboue for to meddle wyth(*Note: p. 92, l. 35. "for to meddle wyth:" Fr. pour vous mesler = to engage.*) the sarasyns, I sal make to them a grete dyscomfyte." "vassal," sayd the doughter, "ye may auaunte you ouer moche: yet ye be there and wel ferre for to be oute(*Note: "wel ferre for to be oute:" i. e. very far from being out. Perhaps we should read "wel ferre fro to be oute."*)and yet menace ye them that ben at theyr lyberte. It is better a man wysely to be styлле than folysshly to speke." Gherard sayd to the lady: "Damoyssel, I sal saye to you one worde. he that is deteyned and strongly empesshed singeth gladly for to forgete his payne and melancholye." And Floripes byhelde gherard the curtoys whyche excused Olyuer of that whyche he spake ouer hardyly, but thys was not grete meruaylle. For of the Ioye that olyuer had whan the lady said to hym that they sold be put oute of pryson hym thought thenne to be out and armed at his free wylle. But the lady sayd to gherard: "In trouthe, syr, ye can wel say and excuse your felowe redyly. And I byleue veryly that ye can wel playe with maydens of eage in somme chaumbre vnder curteynes dysporte you in loue:(*Note: "ye can wel playe with maydens, &c."*) Compare the corresponding passage in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 1303, and Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdone*, l. 1723.) I trowe ye knowe how and what maner." Guillam the scot answerd and sayd: "by my sowle, madame, ye say soth, of hym ye haue wel deuyned: for fro hens vnto iijC myle ye sal not fynde hys pere.

How the frensshe men were put oute(Note: Ed. outo.) of pryson and were vysyted' by the noble mayde Floripes and' of the beaulte of hyr chaumbre: capitulo iiij

Whan the fayr Florypes had spoken at hir playsyr wyth the barons prysonners se called hir chamberlayn and made hym to brynge a corde a staffe(Note: "a corde a staffe." In *Sir Ferumbras*, 1308, Floripas sends for "anuylt, tange, slegge." The *Sowdan* agrees with Caxton, for in l. 1647 we are told that she "a rope to hem lete down goon That aboven was teyde faste."

)bounden ouerthwart, after lete it doun. And whan the frensshe men sawe it they made fyrst Olyuer to goo vp, the lady and hyr chamberleyn drewe hym vp by grete force: after that the other wente vp lyghtly ynough. and after se ledde them by an olde gate and secrete, and wythoute knowyng of ony paynym se made them to entre in to hyr chambre, wherof thentre was made meruayllously after the sarasyns werke. Aboue the chyef yate was made by grete scyence the heuen the sterres, the sonne, the mone, the tyme of somer of wynter; wodes, montaynes, byrdes, beestes, fysshe were there paynted of all fygures and lykenesse by meruayllous facyon: after somme sryptures the sone of mathusale dyd do make it. And thys chambre stood vpon a blacke rocke al enuyrouned wyth the see, and in one of the quarters was a gardyn pretoyre(Note: "a gardyn pretoyre:" Fr. *avoit ung pretoire* , i. e. an enclosed yard or space.) meruayllously fayr wherin floures ne fruytes faylled neuer, there of al maladyes and sekenesses sauf onely of the maladye of deth was founden comforte and good helpe. There within grewe mandegloyre. And with the fayre Floripes were in the gallerye these ladyes, Clarmondyne, florette, Florymonde, many other fayr vyrgynes. And hir maistresse named maragonde sayd to Florypes: "A, madame, I knowe wel these frensshe men. yonder goodly man that ye there see is Olyuer, whyche is sone to Reyner of genes and broder to Audeyne, one of the fayrest that is borne of a woman. And thys is he that hath vaynquysshed fyerabras thy broder. that other is gherard of Mondidier, which oftymes hath be prayed honoured. And there is willyam de scot: the camuse(Note: "camuse:" flat-nosed. See note to *Sir Ferumbras*, 4437, and Glossary.) whyche is the hyndmest is geffroy langeuyn. but I praye to my god mahomet that he curse me yf I euer ete or drynke tyl I haue tolde your fader my lord thadmyrall." Floripes anone chaunged al her colour whan se herde these wordes, moche secretly se reteyned hyr Ire ayenst hyr called thys woman to hir by the wyndowe, gaf hyr so grete a stroke that se fyl to the grounde: and called her varlet(Note: "varlet:" a repetition of the original French word.) whyche cam to hyr prestly and threwe the woman in to the see. For Florypes redoubted moche hyr fader his malyce. whan thys olde woman tumbled in to the see Florypes sayd to hyr: "Now goo, thou olde despytous wretche; thou hast thy guerdon. I am now sure that the frensshe men that ben here ne shal neuer be encombred ne in daunger by the." and herof the barons made grete Ioye; thenne Floripes the noble lady came vnto the Frensshe men and kyssed them swetely, whan se sawe oliuer, whyche was al bloody, and knewe wel that he was hurte se sayd to hym: "Syr Olyuer, ne doute ye not for I shal rendre you anone al hole and in good helthe:" wente to the mandegloyre and took a lytel: anone as oliuer had vsed it he was al hole reduced in to good helthe. The barons beyng in this noble chambre anone had good fyre, and after were fette to the table and wel pourueyed of al good vytaylle and delycious metes, of whyche they had grete nede by cause of the grete hungre that they thenne had endured. and after mete they had the baynes chauffed, And thenne they bayned and refayed them at theyr ease; and at the comyng out of theyr baynes they were wel adoubed wyth mantels ryche of sylke golde brouded. thenne Floripes sayd: "lordes barons, ye knowe wel how I haue put my self in grete daunger to brynge you oute of pryson mortal, and ye be here in surete as ferre as no man hath herde vs.(Note: "ye be here in surete as ferre as no man hath herde vs." This hardly conveys the meaning of the original, which runs: *se dauenture quelque*, i. e. so long as, or, provided that no man hath heard us.) For yf of aduenture it were knowen it sold turne vs to euyl. I am not in doute(Note: "I am not in doute:" Fr. *en aultre doute*, i. e. fear.)Olyuer whyche is here present hath ouercomen my brother, to whome naturelly I ought to do reproof. I knowe you wel alle, be ye nothyng abashed: ye knowe wel that ye haue promysed that my secrete shal be hydde emonge you." and after the sayd Florypes sayd: "lordes, I sal say to you there is a knyght in fraunce(Note: Ed. frannce.)whome I haue longe tyme loued: he is named guy of bourgoyne, whiche is the moost godelyest man that I knowe is of the parentage of Charlemayn of the myty Rolland. On a tyme whan I was at Rome I sawe hym, sythe that tyme I haue gyuen to hym myn hert. whan my fader the admyral destroyed Rome,(Note: "when my fader the admyral destroyed Rome." See my Introduction to

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

Sir Ferumbas, p. xii, and Dr. Hausknecht's edition of the *Sowdan*, Introd.) lucafar(*Note*: "lucafar:" in the French versions of the romance *Lucifer* throughout.) of bandas which was moche redoubted emonge the Paynymys the sayd guy of bourgoyne Iusteden togyder, but the sayd guy valyauntly smote hym down to the erthe from hys hors, whyche moche plesyd me, And took in gree the valyaunce of hym in suche wyse that yf I haue hym not to husbond I sal neuer marye. And for the loue of hym I wyl be baptysed byleue in the god of crysten men." With these wordes the frensshe men were moche Ioyous, and gyuen grete thankynges to god for the good wylle of thys fayre mayde. and Gherard de mondydyer sayd to hyr: "Madame, I swere to you that yf we now were armed were in the halle emonge the sarasyns we shold make on them a grete dyscomfyture." But florypes was wyse and sayd: "lordes, late vs thynke wysely on our affayres. And sythe that ye be in surete take a litel reste. Loo, here vj maydens of grete noblesse: Eche of you take one for hys owne, for the better to passe wyth the tyme: reste and take your playsyr, And I sal warante you. For as for myself I shal neuer haue to do with man but wyth Guy of bourgoyne to whome I haue gyuen my herte." Neuertheles for to consyder wel this chapytre there was a grete werke comprysed whan fyrst florypes the curtoys which was a paynym had desyre to speke wyth the frensshe men. alle this toucheth wel the desyre wylle of wymmen for to knowe newe thynges and tydynges, but as moche as touched the werke that she dyd ayenst the kepar of the pryson how they were taken oute That was the werke of a man wel approued, and it had ben grete damage(*Note*: "damage:" Fr. *dommage*.) yf these barons had abyden in pryson. But the fayth of persones doth grete alegement of tormente, for the sayntes of heuen by theyr holy fayth haue obteyned heuen, and many other terryen men victorye of theyr enemyes.(*Note*: The French reads: *et plusieurs aultres terriennes victoires*.) and wyth good ryght he that fyghteth for the fayth, and it happe that he be deteyned,(*Note*: "deteyned:" Fr. *detenu*.) the mercy of god is nyghe for to delyuer hym. The cause wherfore they were delyuerd fro pryson was come fro ferre, that was of rome, for guy of bourgoyne whome se had in loue, and was contente for to be baptysed and byleue in god for to haue the sayd guy in maryage to hyr husbond. wherfore it may not wel be comprysed how loue in thys damoyssel was fyxed and comprysed of longe affectyon, the which was cause of sauynge of the prysoners whyche were, as I haue sayd, in grete daunger.

How kyng' charles sente to Ballant thadmyral, seuen peres of Fraunce whyche wold' not haue goon: capitulo v

The Duc of genes, fader of Olyuer, whic myt not slepe ne ete ne drinke for the sorowe that he had for his sone, whan he myght no lenger endure, he came to kyng charles, and sayd to hym: "Syr Emperour, for the loue of god haue pyte on me! ye knowe my sorowe: ought I to lose olyuer my sone, for whome I am in contynuell anguysshe? yf I haue none other tydynges, I sal deye or ij dayes of melancolye, or of force I must put my self on the waye to goo thyder." whan charles vnderstode hym, he was moeued and full of compassyon for the melancolye of Reyner, sente for Rolland(*Note*: "Rolland." In the *Sowdone*, l. 1668, it is Guy whom Charles orders first to go on the message to Balan. See *Introduction*, and Dr. Hausknecht's note to l. 1665.) and sayd to hym: "Fayre neuewe rolland, vnderstonde me. To-morne in the mornyng thou must goo to Aygremore, shalt say to ballant thadmyral wythoute ony hydyng, that he delyuer to the the crowne of Ihesu cryst the other relyques for which I haue taken grete payne: And after aske of hym my barons whom he holdeth in pryson. And yf he wythsaye the, say to hym that I shal hym do be drawen vylaynously, after hange hym by the necke, his eyen bounden as a theef." whan he had said, Rolland answerd: "Syr kyng and fayre vnle, haue mercy on me! I am wel sure that yf I goo, verayly I sal neuer see you." The duke naymes was there, whyche sayd: "syr emperour, take hede what ye doo. Rolland is your neuewe; ye knowe of what valewe he is of. yf he goo thyder, he shal neuer come ageyn." "And I assure you," sayd Charles, "that ye shal goo wyth hym, and bere my letters that I sende to thadmyral." Thys sayd, Basyn the genewey came forth, and sayd to hym: "how, syr, wyl ye thus lese your knyghtes? I am certayn that yf they goo as ye haue sayd, that there sal not one retorne." Charles sware by his eyen in his heed, that basyn shold goo wyth the other tweyne, and so ther sal be thre. Thyerry, duc of ardayne, sayd lyke to thother; therefore he was ordeyned to goo also. Ogyer the danoys semblably sayd they ought not goo; and therefore he was ordeyned to bere them felywsyp. Rychard of Normandye came to the emperour and sayd: "Syr kyng, I am al abashed how ye haue noo pyte of your knyghtes, whyche wyllyngly ye wyl make them to deye. I wote wel yf they goo thyder, ye haue loste them." "by the god on whome I byleue," sayd charles, "ye sal goo wyth the other; and thenne shal ye be vj for to

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

bere my letters to ballant thadmyral whome I soo moche hate." And after, he behelde guy of bourgoyne, and sayd to hym: "come to me: ye are my cosyn,(*Note: "cosyn." Guy was Charles's nephew: see Sir Ferumbras, 1922, 2091, &c., and see Dr. Hausknecht's note to the Sowdone, l. 1888.*) and of my next parentage; ye shall be the seuenth for to doo my message to thadmyral of spayne.

And ye shal say to hym that I purpose to baptyse hym,& that he holde of me his Royame, hys townes and hys cytees, that he delyuer to me the relyques for whome I take on me soo grete payne and trauallye. And yf he gaynsaye it, say ye to hym that I shal doo hange hym, and make to dye vylaynously." "alas!" sayd Guy of bourgoyne, "ryght dere syr and emperour, I knowe now wel that ye wyl lese(*Note: "lese:" destroy. Fr. perdre.*) me. yf I goo, I am sure I shal neuer retorne." thenne at euen they went al to souper. And on the morne, assone as the sonne aroos, the seuen barons aforesayd came tofore Charles, And syr Naymes said for them al: "Emperour of noblesse, redoubted in al places, we been here for tobeye thy commaundement. We praye the that thou gyue vs lycence and congie for to departe; yf there be ony persone here present, or in al thexcersyte, that hath trespased to vs, we pardonne hym, semblably yf we haue offended to ony, In thonour of god that it be pardoned to vs." with these wordes all the frensshe men that were present began to wepe for pyte. And charles sayd to the barons: "Ryght dere and wel byloued, vnto god of heuen I commaunde you; and the meryte of his holy passyon and of the holy crosse be in your ayde comfort."

And so they departed on theyr waye hastely, transporting them vnto the straunge contreye.

How the admyral sente xv kynges sarasyns to Charles for to haue ageyn fyerabras, which were recounted' by the peres of fraunce, and' slayn: capitulo vj

In aygremore was thenne ballant thadmyral, al sorowful and angry, had sente for xv kynges sarasyns for to haue theyr counceyll, whiche at hys commaundement came: one maradas, the moost fyerce of the xv, spake fyrst to ballant and sayd: "Syr admyral, wherfore hast thou sente for vs?" ballant answerd and sayd: "lordes, I shal say to you þ^c trouth. Charlemayn of fraunce requyreth of me grete folye. For he wyl that I be subgette to hym, that I holde al my londes of hym. but thys shal not be; and he is a moche fole, me thynketh, to enterpryse suche folyes. It were better to hym to take hys playsyr to slepe, reste in his chambres hys olde body, praye god in his chyrches, and ete suche as he hath. Neuertheles I counceyl you that ye goo to hym to mormyonde where as he is lodged, and say to hym that I comaunde hym, olde dotard, that he byleue in mahoun our god wythoute delaye; aboue that, for to sende and yelde to me ageyn my sone Fyerabras, for whome I am deteyned in grete anguysshe and sorowe. And furthermore I wyl that he holde of me al Fraunce and hys regyons: and yf he do not as ye shal deuysel, I shal goo fetche hym wyth an hondred thousand men armed. And yf by aduenture ye fynde in your waye ony crysten man, smyte of his heed wythout ony mercy:" whan thadmyral had sayd, Maradas answerd: "Syr admyrall, I knowe now wel that ye wyl haue vs destroyed, for the frenssh men ben moche felons. And yf we say that ye haue purposed, he shal sone make an ende of vs, for we shal be dysmembred. but byleue ye not that I say thys for cowardyse or for to eschewe your commaundement, but that I wyl accomplysshe it. For I haue suche courage, that yf by aduenture I medle wyth these crysten men, I sal put to dethe ten or I be wery. And yf I do not as I haue sayd, I wyll that ye do smyte of my hede." alle his felawes sayden that eche of them shold do as wel as Maradas; wherfore wythoute more delyberacyon they wente to horse-backe, wel armed, grete speres in theyr hondes, with penouns reysed puyssauntly, and Iourneyed forth on theyr waye, and rested not tyl they passed the brydge of mantryble; assone as they myght, they passed ouer. And the frensshe men afore named came and recounted those sarasyns. And fyrst, due Naymes espyed them, sayd to his felowes: "O lord god of heuen, what enterpryse hath these sarasyns made! See ye not them, how they come ayenst vs wyth grete puyssaunce? aduyse we vs what is best to doo." Rolland sayd: "my lordes, ne doubt ye noo thyng. Beholde, and see them; they be not passyng xx or xxx; late vs ryde strayte to them." They alle were of hys oppynyon, and ryde forth fast ayenst them. Of the partye of the sarasyns was Maradas puyssaunt wel armed, whyche went and sayd to the frensshe men: "how be ye so Infortunat and cursed to come and mete wyth vs, and ye be cristen?"(*Note: "and:" if.*) Duke Naymes ansuerd:

How the admyral sente xv kynges sarasyns to Charles for to haue ageyn fyerabras, which were recounted' by

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

"what someuer thou be, thou spekest vylaynnously and ouer folysshly: we be men longyng to þ^e redoubted emperour Charles, and goo in ys name to do a message to Ballant thadmyral." Maradas sayd to hym: "ye be in daunger: wyl ye defende you or doo otherwyse?" Naymes ansuerd: "we wyl defende vs by the helpe of Ihesu our maker." maradas said: "which of you dare Iuste ayenst me?" "I am al redy," sayd Naymes. Maradas said: "thou art moche presumptuous; For yf I had suche ten as thou arte, I wold confounde(*Note: Orig. confonnde.*) them al wyth my swerde, and bere theyr hedes to thadmyral, wythout gretely to wery me." and after sayd to hys felawes: "herkene yther, syrs, I wyl that no persone of you moeue, For I allone wyl conquere them alle; and after I sal present them to ballant thadmyrall." whan rolland had herde, he was almoost araged for anger, and after sayd to Maradas: "thou hast folyly spoken and thought thyng whyche thou shalt neuer see. or it be euen, þou salt knowe what we can do. kepe the fro me, for I deffye the." And whan he had thus sayd, he broched hys hors wyth his spores sarply. And they recountred soo harde with their speres square sarpe, that it was grete meruayle that bothe were not dede with þ^e stroke, theyr hawberks were al to-broken. And wyth theyr swerdes they smote the helmes rychely wrought. Rolland was so furyous, that he(*Note: Orig. he he.*) helde(*Note: Comparing p. 183, l. 32, it is clear that we should read "he behelde."* On Durandal, see note to *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 988, and the *Sowdone*, l. 875.) durandal, and araught maradas vpon is helme, that he descerkled(*Note: "descerkled:" cut off the circle or band of gold worn round the helmet. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 622, and note, and the corresponding passage in the *Sowdone*, l. 1182, and Dr. Hausknecht's note.) and departed it; after by grete force recouerd hys stroke vpon hys bare hede, and clefted it vnto vnder hys brayne: and al dede maradas fyl down to therthe. whan the other sawe kyng Maradas dede, and that Rolland wolde haue borne awaye hys heed, they loked eche on other as al abashed, and concluded to take vengeance on the frensshe men, and ronnen vpon rolland for to haue put hym to deth, but he deffended hym ouer meruayllously. And there-vpon that one partye came vpon that other, helde them in bataylle so valyauntlye, in especyall the frensshe men ayenst the sarasyns, that alle the paynyms were slayne, none saued of the xv, but one, wiche fledde whan he sawe his felowes dede, and went for to sewe how they were destroyed by the frenssh men, neuer cessed tyl he came to thadmyral. To whome thadmyral sayd: "Syr kyng, ye be wel hasty to retorne! telle me now how ye haue done." That other sayd to hym: "syr admyrall, by mahoun, it gooth ryght euyl. beyonde the brydge of mantryble we recountred seuen glotons of fraunce, which were men of kyng Charles al enraged, and sayd that they came in hys name to do a message vnto you. after, they ranne vpon vs, and haue doon theyr deuoyr so gretely ayenst vs, that al be dede sauf I, whyche am escaped wyth grete payne for to come and sewe to you." whan thadmyral vnderstode thys, he was almoost dede for sorowe of the deth of hys kynges aforesayd.*

Of the meruayllous bridge of Mantryble; of the trybute there payed' for to passe ouer, and' how wyth fayr wordes the frenssh men passed ouer the said brydge: capitulo vij

Whan the frensshe men aforesayd had put to deth the sarasyns, they were al trauaylled and wery, and wente and rested them in a medowe al grene and ful of swete floures: and after sayd the duc naymes: "my lordes, I counceylle you that we retorne to Charles, and say to hym how we haue doon; I wote wel that he sal be wel contente whan he shall knowe how we haue gouerned vs." Thenne Rolland answerd and sayd: "How, Syr naymes, speke ye of retornyng? Speke not therof, For as longe as I may holde durandal in my hond, by the playsyr of god I thynke not to retorne. For we wyl doo our message to ballant thadmyral, how someuer it be. and late vs do one thyng wherof euery man shal speke. late eche of vs take one of these hedes, and we sal presente them to thadmyral." Naymes sayd to hym: "syr rolland, it semeth that ye be oute of your wytte. For yf we do so, we shal be anone slayn." Thyery and the other were of thoppynyon of Rolland; and so eche of them toke an hede, and rode forth on theyr waye. Duc naymes was the fyrst that wente behelde the brydge of mantryble, whyche was meruayllous, as ye shal here, and sayd to his felowes: "lordes, ye shal vnderstonde that beyonde the brydge is Aygre more, where we shal fynde thadmyral." Ogyer(*Note: "Ogyer:" in *Sir Ferumbras* it is Richard of Normandy who gives the account of Mantryble, which he was able to do, because, as we learn, "he knew all the cost."*) the danoyrs sayd: "vs byhoueth fyrst to passe by thys brydge, whych is moche daungerous. There ben xxx arches of marble wel spacyous brode, whyche been soulded wyth leed and cyment, with grete barres of yron: vpon(*Note:*

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

Orig. wpon.) whyche brydge been grete towres wyth fayr pylers rychely ordeyned, the walles ben of grete strengthe. For at the lowest may wel be mesured ten ellys a brede. hyt is soo brode that xx knyghtes may goo arme in arme at their ease. there is a drawebrydge for to drawe vp, whiche descendeth wyth ten grete chaynes of yron. And aboue on hye is an egle of golde moche replendyssaunte and synyng lyke the sonne, that it semeth that it were a flame of fyre, whyche is seen a large myle ferre. and the ryuer that passeth vnder is named flagot, whyche is byneth the arche by mesure xv foot, and renneth so Inpytuously as a quarel out of an arbalastre, in suche wyse that neyther bote ne galeye may passe ouer, for the grete cours of the water. And more ouer this brydge is kepte wyth a geaunte for thadmyral, whyche geaunte is named Galafre, one of the moost terryble of humayn people. And he holdeth a grete axe of stele for to destroye them that wyl doo ayenst hys wylle. And who that wyl speke wyth thadmyral must nedes passe by hym." "Seygnours," sayd rolland, "doubte ye no thyng, I praye you: care not for passyng ouer the brydge, For I swere to you that as longe as it sal please god to kepe my body, that I may holde durandal in my honde, I sal not doubte ony paynym the valewe of a peny, what someuer he be. And by god that henge on the crosse, I shal smyte the porter yf he come tofore me, what someuer shal happe." Duc naymes of bauyere reprysed hym: "Rolland, ye speke not wysely. It is not good to gyue a stroke for to receyue therfore fyftene: late me do; For by the playsyr of god and of hys sayntes, I sal say to hym suche lesynges and other thynges that we shal passe wyth oute daunger." whan the frensshe men came tofore the brydge, the porter toke an hondred knyghtes, came aualed the lytel brydge wyth as many guysarmes other glayues of defence. The fyrst that went byfore was duc naymes with hys whyte heeres, for he was older than ony of the other. Anon the porter passed ouer toke Naymes by the honde, drewe hym ouer, after sayd to hym: "whyther wylt thou goo?" Naymes ansuerd: "I shal say you the trouthe. we be men of charles, the noble emperour, goo to Aygremore to do a message to ballant thadmyral. But certeynly he hath quytte is contreye of fals peple,*(Note: "he hath quytte his contreye of fals peple."* There can be little doubt that we should read "he hath not quytte.") for it is not longe tyme passed that on the felde we fonde xv gloutons, whyche wold haue taken fro vs our lyf our horses. Neuertheles we haue gouerned them in suche manere that here ben the hedes. beholde them wel what they be, yf ye byleue me not." whan the porter herde hym, he was almoost oute of hys wytte for angre, sayd to Naymes: "vassal, vnderstonde me! ye must paye the passage of the brydge tofore al thyng." Duc Naymes sayd: "porter, demaunde what ye ought to haue, we shal contente you." "by mahoun," sayd the porter, "it is not a lytel. For I aske of you xxx couple houndes, after, an C maydens chaste of good maners, an C fawcons mewed, an C palfroyes in good poynte rested, and for euery foot of the horses a marke of fyn gold; atte last I must haue iiiiij sommyers charged with golde syluer. thus ought ye paye, or ellys come not here. and he that may not paye the trybute tofore deuysed, he must lese hys heed wythoute other excusacyon." duc Naymes was not abashed, Notwithstandyng that he knewe the occasyon that the porter sought that they shold deye, by cause that it was not possyble to paye that he had deuysed: ansuerd to the porter in this manere, and sayd: "Syr porter, yf I owe noo more than ye haue sayd, ye shal be contente or mydday be passed. Our bagayge cometh after vs, and harnoys more in nombre than an hondred thousand, where there be maydens fayr, gentyl fawcons, dogges grete plente, hawberks, helmes, and good seldes wythoute nombre, And many other Iewellys noble and ryche: take of them as it shalle playse your wylle." The portyer supposed that he had said trouthe, and was wel contente, and lete the brydge doun, and after they passed ouer lyghtly. Rolland, which myght not forbere lawhyng, sayd: "In trouthe, syr Duc Naymes, ye haue wel spoken, for by lesynges we passe thys brydge." and rolland came behynde alle the other; whan they were a lytel forth vpon the brydge, Roulland encountred a Turke, and sythe sayd in his courage: "A, lord god of paradys, late me do a thyng wherof thow mayst be honoured, and alle thyng happe wel," and withoute sayeng of ony worde to his felowes, he lyghted doun from hys hors, and toke thylke turk by the myddel, and threwe hym hastely in to the ryuer. Duc Naymes loked behynde hym, and sawe the paynym falle, and was moche angry, and sayd: "lord god of heuen, I trowe the deuyll is in the body of Roulland! he can haue noo pacyence in hym. and yf god helpe vs not, he sal cause vs al to be slayn and vylaynsly deye." For Rolland was so fyers of courage that he toke none hede of the tyme ne the place how to gouerne*(Note: Orig. gruerne.)* hym, but wold alwaye auenge hym on his enemye where he myt fynde hym.

How the barons came and' spake to the Admyrall, and' how they dyd' theyr message: capitulo viij

The barons afore sayd, whan they had passed the brydge and were nyghe vnto aygremore, where as ballant was, they entred in to the towne in good ordynaunce, and wyth countenaunce of fyersnes and of noblesse. And they sawe in the stretes, fawcons and other byrdes of proye vpon the perches, grete oxen and buefs slayn flayn, fayre hangyng, and grete swyn strangled; and they recountred a sarasyn whome they demaunded where thadmyral was. And he shewed hym to them, where he satte vnder a tree in the sadowe. and thenne they alyghted, and duc Naymes sayd: "my fayre lordes, I sal bere the letter and sal speke fyrst, and ye after." Roulland was there, and present hym, and wold by force haue spoken fyrst. duc Naymes sayd to hym "Say not one word, for ye be al fro your self, wythoute hauyng attemperaunce. but god do not to vs grete grace, ye shal make vs alle to deye or the day be passed." And herupon they entred and presented them al tofore the admyral wythoute ony reuerence. And duc Naymes(*Note: "Naymes": in Sir Ferumbas, Roland: the Sowdone* agrees with our text, see l. 1821.) of bauyere spake fyrst in thys manere: "The maker of alle the world, to whom onely out to be gyuen creaunce entyere and honoure, saue and kepe the noble kyng charlemayn, puysaunt, stronge wyse emperour, rolland olyuer, al the other pyeres of fraunce, and confounde, fro the toppe of the hede vnto the plantes of the feet, the Admyral here present, as moche as tofore yesterday hys subgettes were euyl pourueyed beyonde þe bridge of mantryble. we fonde fyftene glotons on the felde, which wold haue taken from vs our horses and do to vs vylonnye, but, god of heuen be thanked, they bought it gretely and dere." Whan the Admyral vnderstoode this langage, vnnethe he myght kepe hymself fro enragyng. And there tofore hym came the kyng that escaped, of whome I haue spoken tofore, and sayd to thadmyral in thys manere: "Ryght dere syr, thynke to aduenge you. These been the seuen glotons of whyche I tolde to you, whyche haue slayn your kynges, and haue doon to you suche vylonnye." The admyral Ballant ansuerd: "late them be for thys tyme:" and sythe after sayd to Naymes the duc(*Note: Ed. dnc.*), that be sold fynysse hys message. And the duc ansuerd that he so do wold gladly, and sayd in thys manere: "The grete noble kyng of Fraunce commaundeth the that thou rendre to ym the crowne, with whyche the blessyd Ihesu Cryste was crowned wyth, and the other relyques for whome he hath taken grete trauallye and payne; also his knyghtes whom thou holdest in pryson folysshly. and yf thou do not as I haue to the deuysed, Charles shal make the to be hanged by the necke on a gybet and strangled vylaynously." Thadmyral ballant, replenysshed of an entencyon moche outrageous, sayd to Naymes the duc: "Thou hast gretely defouled me by outrage, and I haue wyllyngly herde the. Goo forth and sytte down by yonde pyler, these other shal speken whom I haue not yet herde. Mahommet my god, to whome I haue gyuen myself, gyue me an euyl deth yf euer I ete or drynk tyl I see thy hede flee fro thy soldres." The duc Naymes ansuerd: "yf it playse god my maker, his blessyd moder, þou salt haue made a lesyng." After hym spake Rychard duc of Normandy, said: "vnderstonde me, syr admyral! Charles the kyng, with his berde florysshed,(*Note: "with his berde florysshed." Compare Roland and Otuel, 82; where Naymes, describing Charles, says: "He sittes his duspers Imange.*

With white berde large and lange

Faire of flesche felle.

With a floreschede thonwange,

Oure noble kynge þat es so strange,

His doghety men imelle."

) comandeth the by me, y^t thou do the baptyse for tamende thy ryght euyl lyf, that thou sende to hym the relyques that thou hast in thy puysaunce, also that thou rendre to ym hys knyghtes, wyche thou holdest wythout reson for prysoners. yf thou do not as thou hast herde, charles shal do hange the by the necke on a gybet strangle þ^e, sal neuer haue mercy on the." Thadmyral ballant supposed to haue knowen hym, sayd thus: "mahommet, in whom I byleue, curse the! thou resemblest wel Rychard of normandy, whych slewe my vncl corsuble. Now wold Mahoun the god that he were here! he shold neuer ete mete tyl he were dede. Goo and sytte down by thy felowe, vnto I haue herde thy felowes." Aftyр thys thenne came basyn the genewey, stode tofore ballant and sayd: "Ballant admyral, the noble charles, aboue al humayn creatures redoubted, commaundeth the to rendre to hym the relyques whyche haue been requyred of the, or ellys he sal do hange and strangle the as a theef proued." whan he had sayd thus, he went and satte wyth the other. And after came thyerry, duc of Ardayne, dyssymyled his chyere

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

countenance of manere. whan thadmyral sawe that he had the regarde so ydous, he was moche abassed, and supposed that he had ben a deuyl. And after, thyerry sayd: "herkene to me, admyral, reteyne wel my wordes. Charles, the noble emperour redoubted, commaundeth the that thou sende to hym the relyques which thou barest awaye fro Rome, also sende vnto hym hys barons whyche thou hast in thy power, or ellys be thou sure that he sal do dysmembre the, doo hange the vylaynsly by the necke." Thadmyral answerd: "vassal, I praye the to telle to me, and yde it not, what man is charlemayn, and of what force strengthe is he, of the wiche I haue herde moche preysed vaunted?" Thenne the duc Thyerry ansuerd: "I telle to the, admyral, lete the wete, that Charles is noble hardy, curtoys and of good lyf. And be thou sure, that yf he were present here wyth hys excersyte, moche sone he shold gyue the a buffet vpon thy vysage. And on that other syde, he setteth nomore by the than of an olde hounde dede, or of a roten apple." Incontynent tho ballant the admyrall bygan to lawhe for felonnye, after sayd to Thyerry: "My frende, by thy fayth that thou owest to thy god, say to me now the trouth. yf I were now in thy wylle and subgectyon, as thou arte in myn, by thy fayth what woldest thou do wyth me?" "by my fayth," sayd Thyerry, "I shal not lye. I shold doo hange the by the necke, and strangle the vylaynsly on a gybet or it were yet nyght." "Vassal," sayd the Admyrall, "thou hast sayd grete folye. For by Mahomet my god, in lyke wyse shal I doo of the, as thou hast sayd of thy self. Goo thou and sytte by thy felawes." Thenne after hym came the good Ogyer the danoy tofore hym, and sayd: "O Admyral of Spaygne, vnderstonde what Charles, the moost noble of humayn creatures and moost ryche wythoute comparyson, demaundeth of the. Rendre and yelde to hym the relyques whyche thou hast borne awaye, or ellys he shal do dysmembre the, and doo the deye samefully." Thadmyral, beyng al wroth, made hym to sytte wyth the other. After hym, rolland the courageous came tofore Ballant thadmyral, wythoute doying to hym ony reuerence, and sayd to hym: "Thou sarasyn, vnhappy cursed, take hede to my wordes! Charles, the noble kyng and Emperour redoubted, sendeth to the by me, that thou byleue in god Ihesu cryst, the maker of al the world, in the glorious vyrgyn marie his moder; and do the to be baptyseed, and thynke to rendre the relyques whiche thou occupyest and atteynest ayenst hys wylle. And also see that hys barons be rendred and delyuerd hole and in good poynte. For yf thou do otherwise than I haue sayd to the, Charles the valyaunte shal make the to be hanged as a thief." Thadmyral sayd to hym: "thou hast rebuked and blamed me proudly, but I swere to the by Mahoun, my god, by Termagaunte, that I shal not ete tyl thou be hanged strangled." Thenne Roulland answerd: "for trouthe, sarasyn, yf thou abyde to that houre, thou holdest faste ouer longe. Thou shalt not do so, For I doubte the not the valure of an olde dede hounde drowned." Guy of bourgoyn came after hym tofore ballant thadmyral, and sayd to hym in thys manere: "Charles commaundeth the that thou make to hym obeysaunce, and that thou restore the relyques and hys barons; and thenne shalte thou do as a wyse man: and yf thou wylt byleue me, I wyl wel counceyl the. Byleue in god Ihesu Cryste, whyche is almyghty, wythoute ende and wythoute begynnynge. And yf thou byleuest my counceyl, thou mayst be in his grace. And lo! what thou shalt do: take of thy robe, thy hosen, thy soon of thy body, and goo in thy sherte, and bere on thy body a sadel of an hors, and reste not tyl thou come before the face of Charles, and humbly presente thy self to hym, crye for mercy to god thy maker almyghty, for thyn errors and outrages. And crye hym mercy in the honour of god almyghty; and yf thou doo not thus as I haue sayd, he shal make the be hanged, brente, or drowned, and samefully(*Note: Orig. shamefilluy.*) to dye."

The Admyrall was more determyned and araged than he had been tofore, and sent anone for Brullant de Mommyere, Sortybrant de Conymbres, and for the other that were of hys counceyl, and demaunded theyr aduys and counceyl vpon these thynges aforesayd. Anone sortybrant sayd to hym: "Syr admyral, I counceylle you that anone they be dysmembred and slayn, and after ye may goo and ryde with your strengthe oueral, and come to mormyonde where charles is pensyf: yf ye may take hym, ye shal put hym to deth. After ye shal descende in to fraunce, doo you be crowned there as kyng." "by mahoun," sayd ballant, "ye haue wel sayd. Now be it doon after your deuysse: goo in to the pryson, bryng wyth you the other theyr felowes, for to do after the enterpryse." And thus as I haue sayd, Thadmyral was of entencyon to make of the frensse men aforesayd, after that is tofore deuysed.

How by the moyen of florypes al the frensshe men were saued', and' lodged' togydre, and' the relyques shewed', and other thynges: capitulo ix

Floripes the curtoys, after that se had wel secretly herde al the debate toforesayd, se came out of hyr chambre, and salewed hir fader, demaunded of hym: "What been these knyghtes sette there aparte?" Thadmyral ansuerd: "my doughter, they be borne in fraunce: the whyche haue sayd to me wordes of grete Importaunce ful of reproches, and haue blamed me and offended gretely, more than I can telle you or say. What counceyl gyue ye to me that I ought to do wyth them?" The doughter sayd: "I shal say to you, my fader, that ye wythoute longe taryeng do smyte of theyr heedes, for they haue wel deserued it. And do smyte of theyr hondes, brenne them in a fyre without your cyte." "my doughter," sayd the admyral, "ye haue ryght wel sayd: ryght soo shal it be doon. Goo ye in to the pryson, and brynge to me the other." "good fader," ansuerd the doughter, "it is tyme to dyne, and yf ye wyl begynne to do Iustyce, ye may not ete tyl mydday be passed." This doughter sought none other thyng but occasyon by fayr wordes, accordyng to the wylle of hyr fader thadmyral, for to brynge al the frensshe men to—gyder wyth them that were prysonners. And after sayd to hyr fader: "gyue to me these Frensshe men! I shal make theym wel to be kepte; and after your dyner ye shall do Iustyce wyth lasse tedyacyon, and thenne your people sal be assembled." To the whyche the Admyral consented, And was contente thyt hys doughter sold haue them in kepyng. Alwaye sortybrant, which knewe the mutabylyte of wymmen thynconstaunce, sayd to Ballant: "Syr Admyral, it is noo thyng couenable that vpon thys fayte ye ought to truste in a woman, by cause of theyr mutabylyte, ye haue oft herd say ensaumples. and also ye knowe the trouthe how many haue ben deceyued by wymmen." Moche angry euyl content was floripes of the wordes of Sortybrant And sayd: "horson Traytour, desloyal, pariured, yf I thought not it shold torne me to ouermoche blame, I shold gyue to the suche a buffet on thy vysage, that the blode shold auale down habundauntly." And after these wordes thadmyral was euyl contente of thys debate. And therupon she took the frensshe men ladde them in to hyr chambre wythoute ony lenger taryeng. And goyng by the waye Syr naymes the duc sayd: "A god of heuen, kyng of eternal glorie, who is he that euer sawe a more fayrer lady in hys lyf? Moche wel shold he be Inspyred with the grace of god that shal haue hyr in ys courage in loue." Rolland was euyl contente and sayd to Naymes: "What hondred thousand of deuyls hath maad you to speke now of loue? It is not now tyme to speke of suche thyng." Duc Naymes sayd thus: "Syr Rolland, dysplese you not, For I was ones amerous." the douter sayd to them that they were not assembled to plede that one ageynst that other. and also sone as they were wythin the chambre, the doughter made to shette faste the yates, anone rollandimette wyth Olyuer, and enterbraced eche other kyssed(*Note: "enterbraced eche other kyssed:" Fr. se font baisser et accoller.*) wyth franke and tender herte in wepyng moche tenderly, and alle the other semblably; Rolland sayd: "Alas, Olyuer, my faythful felowe, how is it with you sythe I last sawe you?" "Ryght wel," answerd Olyuer. and eche demaunded of other of theyr feates, of the contreyes, and of theyr lordes tydynges. Now ye may thynke that they were gladde eche of other that they were al togyder in good poynte by the moyen of Florypes the fayr lady, whyche dyd grete socours to crystendom, whan by hyr, hyr wysedom and dyscrescyon the captayns of the crysten fayth, as moche as toucheth the excersyte of bataylle to destroye the myscreauntes and paynims, ben founden alle togyder in surete, whyche fyrst were comen in to the hondes of theyr enemyes mortall.

But it is grete scyence for to eschewe the wylle of a woman, whan by effecte she putteth hyr entente to a thyng, that her hert dyrectly draweth, and taketh no regarde to the ende of her entente but onely that she may ahyeue hyr enterpryse and determynacyon. Florypes retched of noo thyng but that se myt haue tydynges certeyn of guy of bourgoyne, to whome se had gyuen hyr hert, and was contente to be crystened for the loue of hym. Thys fayr Florypes, whan se sawe these barons to—gydre, she sayd to them: "lordes, I wyl that ye alle of one accorde promyse to me the fayth of loyalte that ye sal ayde and helpe me of that I sal demaunde you, toward me ye shal truly bere and endeouyre you." "Ryght gladly;" ansuerd duc Naymes, "and also ye sal assure vs that we sal be here in surete withoute ony doubte of ony man lyuyng." se was contente, they were contente, and promysed fydeyte that one to the other. whan this was doon, the doughter came to duc naymes for to knowe what he was, and demaunded of hym hys name. the duc sayd to hyr: "Madame, I am called Naymes of bauyere, Man and counceyllour to Charles the Emperour redoubted." "Alas!" sayd the douter, "your kyng is sory for you." After se

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

came to Rychard and demaunded of hym how he was named. he ansuerd to hyr: "dame, I am Rychard of Normandye." the doughter sayd to hym: "Mahomet curse the I thou putttest to deth on a tyme corsuble myn vncler. But for the loue of these other thou salt be in no daunger." Florypes came after to rolland, and prayed that he wold telle hys name. "I am named rolland," sayd he, "sone to duc Myllon, am neuewe to charles, sone of hys syster." Anone the doughter cryed hym mercy kneled down to hys feet, and Rolland toke hyr swetely vp. After, the doughter sayd: "ye knowe what ye haue promysed to me. I sal say to you myn entencyon. It is trouthe that I loue a knyght of fraunce aboue al them of the world, whyche is named guye of bourgoyne, of whom I wold gladly haue tydynges." rolland sayd: "I swere to you by my hede that he is here in your syght, that there is not bytwene you tweyne the space of foure foot of mesure." "Seynours," sayd she, "I praye you that I may knowe hym, and that he be gyuen to me, for of hym is alle my playsyr." Rolland ansuerd and sayd: "syr guye of Bourgoyne, come ye hyther to thys mayde and receyue hyr Ioyously." Guye of bourgoyn ansuerd: "god forbede that euer I sold take wyf, but yf se were gyuen to me by Charles themperour." Whan Florypes vnderstode hym, anone she chaunged colour, and sware by mahomet hyr god that yf he gaynsayed it se sold make them alle to be hanged by the necke on a gybette. Rolland exhorted Guye that he sold do hyr wylle, and vpon that he aduaunced hym, hath graunted. Thenne florypes sayd: "the sone of god of crystyante be preysed and honoured, For I haue tofore myn eyen the moost grettest playsyr that euer myn hert desyred. For is loue I shal byleue in Ihesu Cryst, shal do me be baptyssed:" after, se approached to hym for to treate a lytel the desyre of hir hert, and se durst not kysse hym on the mouthe, but on hys chekes chynne, by cause se was a paynym. Thenne florypes Ioyously and by grete loue came vnto a cheste and opened it tofore the barons, and spredde a fayr cloth of sylke. And after se dysclosed and sewed the relyques of whyche I haue spoken tofore, emonge whome was the glorious crowne wyth whiche Ihesu cryste was crowned with in the tyme of hys passyon, and the holy naylles whyche perced hys holy handes and feet: and after sayd to Rolland: "Loo! here is the tresour that ye haue so moche desyred." Whan the frensshe men sawe thus tofore them the relyques, For Ioye they alle wepte moche tenderly, and one after the other wente kyssed them, knelyng moche humbly; after, they were layed in to the cheste where as they had ben tofore.

How Lucafer neuewe of the admyral vyolently entred' in to the chambre, after was slayn of duc Naymes in blowyng of the cool: capitulo x

Ballant thadmyral beyng moche wroth syttyng at the table, A paynym fyers proude, a specyal frende of thadmyral, named lucafer of bandas, sayd to thadmyral affectuously: "Syr admyral, is it trouthe that I haue herde say, that Fyerabras, your sone and my ryght dere brother, is taken and vaynquysshed, whyche was the beste knyght that euer was a-lyue?" Thadmyral said to hym: "by my fayth I sal not hyde it fro you. A frensshe man hath conqerred hym whome Mahoun confounde!" Brullant of Mommyere made grete deffence, and the kyng of Sulye. They bare them soo wel that they brought to vs fyue of the gloutons(*Note: "gloutons." Cf. Sir Ferumbras, 1634, 3841, &c.*) of fraunce, knyghtes of Charles, whyche ben in pryson. and sythe ryght now we haue other seuen whiche ben comen as messagers fro the sayd charles, whic haue vytupered and blamed vs gretelye in reprochyng our lawe despysyng my goddes. Florypes my doughter hath conduyted them in to pryson." "Syr," sayd lucafer, "ye do grete folye. Wymmen al day for lytel thyng ben chaunged and torded fro theyr thout. neuertheles for the more surete, yf it playse you, and by your comaundement, I sal goo to them, and shal knowe what they be, and of what condycion." "Goo forth," said thadmyral, "ye say rygt wel, and make my doughter to retorne wyth you." herupon lucafer, moche proude and replenysshed wyth grete fyersnes, cam in to the chambre where the douter was and the frensshe men, wythoute demaundyng to opene the dore but lyfte vp his ryght fote, and smote it so strongly wyth hys foot that the barres lockes flewe vnto the grounde. Whan Florypes saw that se was al abasshed, And anone sayd to Rolland: "Syr noble knyght, I am ryght euyl contente of the vyolence that is thus done to me. this is he that shold be my husbond ageyn my wylle. I requyre you in as moche as ye wyl do me playsyr that ye wyl auenge thys dysonour, For I complayne me wythoute making ouermoche euyl semblaunte." to whome Rolland answerd: "doubte ye no thyng, madame, For, or he departe hens, he shal knowe that he hath euyl doon. And I promyse you that he bought neuer locke so dere ne of the prys as he shal for the brekyng herof." Hereupon Lucafer entred in to the chambre, and behelde the frensshe men al armed wythout ony doubte that he had to them. And came fyrst to duc Naymes whych was dyscouered and bare hede, wythoute other delyberacyon

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

took hym by the berde, and drewe hym to hym so boystously that almoost he had ouerthrowen hym, after sayd to hym: "of whens art thou, veyllard? hyde it not fro me." The duke Naymes ansuerd: "paynym, I am of bauyere, and that is my contree, and am specyall councyllour of Charlemayne, And al these barons that ben here been al erles and grete lordes, and ben comen for to sewe to ballant the admyral a message fro the sayd charles, redoubted Emperour; by cause that we haue not spoken to hys entencion he hath made vs prysonners. Neuertheles take your hande from my berde, ye haue holde me longe ynough; And be ye sure that I say not al that I thynke." The paynym ansuerd: "I am contente thy folye be pardoned the; but I demaunde of the by thy loyalte, what maner folke ben they of fraunce, and of what enterpryse, and what playes vse they whan they been in your royaume?" "In trouthe," sayd the duc, "Whan the kyng hath dyned, who that wyl may goo playe where hym lyste. Somme ryde oute on horsback, somme goo in to the felde and synge, other make good chere at tables, at the chesse, other playsaunte games. and in the morne every man gooth gladly hereth masse at the houre whan it is sayd, and been wel charytable to gyue almesse to þe poure peple largely and customably. Also whan they goo to bataylle they been fyers and hardy, and been not lygtly vanquysshed. Suche been the peple in the contreye of crystente." lucafer began to lawhe and sayd: "by my god Mahoun, vylayne olde dotard that thow arte, thow spekest folyssly. It is no thyng so of your feat, ne frensshe men be of no valure but yf they can blowe at the grete cole." "In trouthe," said the duc, "I herde neuer therof." the Paynym ansuerd:(*Note: Compare the account of the game "at the coal," given in the Sowdone, ll. 1999-2003. In it Lucifer burns the beard of Naymes, who at once kills him.*) "I shal teche you the manere," and he approached to the duc nyghe by a grete fyre, and in goyng Rolland made sygne to the duc that he sold bere hym wel. Anone lucafer toke the grettest bronde that was on the fyre, And blewe so sarply that the fyre flewe alle aboute habundantly, and after said to duc naymes that he must also blowe. The Duc took the bronde, and knewe wel the manere that the paynym wold hurt hym, and approached to hym, and blewe the bronde so puyssauntly that it fyl al on a flame and came to the vysage of the Paynym, in suche wye that it brente al hys berde. Whan the paynym sawe that, he was almoost out of his wytte for angre. The Duc Naymes wyth that smote hym wyth the bronde in the necke that he brake the bone, and so raught hym wyth so grete myght that his eyen flewe oute of hys heed to the grounde, and sayd to hym: "Fals creature that thou arte, Whome I byseche god confounde, thou wendest to haue made me to muse in thy folyes.(*Note: "thou wendest to haue made me to muse in thy folyes:" Fr. tu me cuidas il na pas gaires bon faite muser en tes folies.*) Now lye there wyth sorowe." Rolland said to hym: "by my fayth, syr duc, ye can wel playe and blowe atte cole. blessyd be that arme that gaf that stroke!" "Lordes," sayd duc Naymes, "yf I haue maad hym to vnderstonde hys folye ye ought not to blame me. ye haue seen how he truffed wyth me." Florypes the curtoys came ner vnto duc Naymes, And sayd: "Certes, syr, ye be worthy to be honoured. I see wel that Lucafer hath no more charge to playe(*Note: "no more charge to playe:" Fr. na plus cure de ioeur.*) wyth you at the cole; he is now at his ease; I see wel that he remeueth not. And I wote now that he neuer shal haue grete desyre to espouse me. For by force he wold haue had me and my fader had gyuen me to hym, but neuer wold I haue suffred it, but rather haue myn hede smyton of, or suffred vylaynous deth."

How, by the councyl of floripes, the frensshe men dyslodged' thadmyral fro his paleys wyth grete bataylle, and' how by enchaument a gyrdle was taken away fro the douter: ca. xj

Florypes was wyse, and had consyderacyon that Lucafer, whyche was dede, was wel byloued wyth thadmyral, and sayd to the frensshe men: "lordes, knowe ye for trouthe that my fader loueth more thys man than ony man lyuyng. he abydeth for hym to come to dyner, wyl not be at ease tyl he shal be returned. and yf by aduenture he knowe what is doon ye shal be here encombred and assaylled, and al the golde of the world shal not redeme you but that ye sal be dede. Wherefore I councyl you that ye doo arme you and put you in poynte.(*Note: "put you in poynte:" Fr. mis en point = arm yourselves completely.*) take lytly your helmes and your seldes, For people that been armed be moche redoubted of other vnarmed. therefore I wyl not that ye be closed ne sette herin, Whan ye come in the paleys where thadmyral is, See that ye bere you and behaue you soo that ye be maysters and lordes of the place, and thenne sal ye be wel lodged." Whan the daughter had thus sayd, they were ryght wel contente, prestly armed them, and gyrdle their swerdes aboute them, And two two yssued oute of the chambre, and goon

How, by the councyl of floripes, the frensshe men dyslodged' thadmyral fro his paleys wyth grete bataylle, and

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

corageously as lyons, boystously as wulues hungry, in suche wyse as they that wold abyde them ought sore to doubt and haue grete fere. And they went oute at the tyme that the sonne wente vnder, bytwene nyght and day. And the formest of them in the waye was rolland, and the other folowed hym ryt fyersly for to fyght. Roulland cryed to hys felowes that eche man shold do hys parte, slee al the paynims and sarasyns that they fonde in the paleys, whyche faylled not. Roulland smote corsuble mortally; Olyuer put to deth the Kynge Coldroe. Ther was not one but that they alle bare them wel. The soupper whyche was wel appoynted (*Note: "whyche was wel appoynted, &c.:" Fr. trestien appareille tantost fut par terre verse*) anone was torned vp so doun caste to the grounde; cuppes of golde and of syluer flewe and sowed in the place; Sarasyns goon to therthe slayn and dysmembred: Other lepe out of the wyndowes, whyche after were founden dede: Other were all to-hewen, soldres legges smyton of. Thadmyral, all araged, put hym self to flyght oute of a wyndowe and lepe doun in to the depe dyche. Rolland went, after whyche had hym gretely at the hert, supposed to haue smyten hym, And atteyned the marble stone of the wyndowe in suche wyse that his swerde entred a foot depe. "Brother," sayd Olyuer, "the admyral is escaped fro you." "Certeyn," ansuerd Rolland, "thereof am I euyl contente." Neuertheles they dyd so grete portement and bare them so wel that they were lordes maysters of the chyef toure of the castel palays. And after shetted fast the yates and were alle sure wythoute daunger. Sauf they myght haue noo mete. This passed a lytel whyle the Admyral was in the dyches al affrayed, and yf there had not be somme for to haue drawn hym oute he had neuer departed; and began to crye to his men that they shold come to hym to drawe hym oute. Brullant of mommyere and sortybrant of conymbres drewe hym out. And after that sayd Sortybrant: "Syr Admyral, byleue me another tyme: Alwaye atte tayl of an olde dogge kepe you." (*Note: Fr. tousiours a la cue dung viel chien vous tenez.*) Thadmyrall answerd: "I praye you scorne me nomore, I shal wel aduenge me or two monethes be passed. Doo sowne to assaulte for tassaylle the toure." Sortybrant sayd: "it is reson that your wyll be doon; but the nyt is ouer nyghe; by myn aduys it is better to abyde tyl to morowe, And thenne your excersyte shal be assembled for to werke more surely." thadmyral was contente, and sayd by grete dysplaysaunce: "Ha, fayr Lucafer! neuer shal I see you more, I haue loste alle my ioye. O ye frensshe men, accursed be ye! ye haue taken hym awaye fro me, but by Mahoun my god, to whome I haue gyuen my lyf, to morne shal the syege be layed tofore the toure. And I shal neuer departe for none euyl wether that sal come, Ne for thyng that may be, tyl the toure be taken and the walles layed on the erthe. And I sal make the frensshe men to be drawn at the taylles of my horses; And after I sal make florypes the putayn to be brente in a fyre openly, and I am wel sure that they shal yelde them, For they be not vytaylled scars for foure dayes. And of that other parte I knowe wel they may haue no socours of no man whatsomeuer he be. For we holde the stronge brydge of mantryble, they may haue noo socours but yf it come ouer that brydge; of that other parte, charles shal haue noo tydynges of his barons ne shal not knowe whether they be dede or a-lyue, or in lyberte or in subiectyon." here vpon they concluded and went to their lodgys tyl on the morne. And on the morne erly, thadmyral sente for al hys subgettes concluded to laye the syege, and sware to holde it seuen yere longe but yf he had of them his wyll. Thenne come there so many paynims in the contreye aboute that theyr lodgyses helde foure myle of space. ye may thynke in what daunger the frensshe men were, whyche were but twelue persones onely, and had none other conduyte ne comferte but to be wythin assyeged in grete peryll of famyne. Neuertheles alwaye where as the sarasyns dyd gretely theyr deuoyr for to entre, yet they coude no thyng gryeue them. Thadmyral called one marpyn, a moche fals thief emonge alle humayn creatures, sayd to hym: "Marpyn, (*Note: "Marpyn:" in the Sowdone, Mapyne; in Sir Ferumbras, l. 2387, Maubyn.*) by the berde that I bere on my chynne yf thou mayst do soo moche as for to stele awaye the gyrdle that Florypes bereth, I sal rewarde and gyue to the largely of my golde syluer, thou shalt be my grete frende. For yf I may haue it, I am sure that the frensshe men shal sone be dede for hungre, and thenne may they nomore greue me." That gyrdle was of suche vertu that as longe as it sold haue dured wythin the toure, they wythin sold neuer haue be famyned. "Syr," sayd the thief, "abyde tyl it be nyght, I swere to you that to morne, or the sonne aryse, I sal sewe to you the gyrdle, & sal delyuer it to you." herupon, whan it was nyght, he entred secretlye in to the dyches, whyche were ful of water, and passed ouer, and after whan he was at the fote of the toure, moche subtylly with his engynes he mounted vp in to the wyndowes, entred in to the toure, and took a candel, after cam to the chambre of Florypes, fonde it faste sette. But with fals dyabolyke wordes he opened it; and whan he was wythin, he sawe that al þ^e barons were fast a-slepe, and he made so enchauntements that for no thyng they myght awake. and thenne he came to Florypes, and serched so pryuely that he took the gyrdle, after gyrde hym self wyth-al. and after thys he behelde the daughter al naked, whiche was moche fayre; was enclyned anone to haue defouled hyr,

How, by the counceyl of floripes, the frensshe men dyslodged' thadmyral fro his paleys wyth grete basylle, and

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

began to take hyr aboute the necke, whyche sodeynly awoke, began to crye mochestrangely, and called hyr maydens the barons. Wherefore the maydens came anone al abasshed aferde. whan they saw marpyn the thief as blacke as a moore, the moost hardyest of them began to flee. Anon as Guye of Bourgoyn herde the voys of florypes, he came to hyr wyth hys naked swerde in his honde, and escryed to hyr that se shold not be aferde of ony thyng. And he came so wel to poynte, (*Note: "he came so wel to poynte, &c.:"* slightly different in the French, *il vient la bien a point, car le larron.*) that yf he had not come, the thief had defowled florypes. but as sone as the thief herde hym, he sprange oute of the bedde wyth grete haste, and Guye of bourgoyne recounted hym, and gaf hym so grete a stroke that he clefte hym by the myddel, and cutte a two the gyrdel, and the candel quenched. The other barons came after, and whan they sawe the werke, the thief dede, they threw the body in to the see wyth the gyrdle. And whan it was knowen that he had stolen the gyrdle, and was loste wyth hym in the see, there was moche sorowe for the losse of soo noble a Jewel. And Florypes wepte ryght sore, sayeng that the losse of the gyrdle may neuer be recouerd. Neuertheles the barons wyth fayre wordes comforted hyr, in suche manere that they alle were contente.

How the barons were assyeged' in the toure wyth Florypes and hyr maydens, which suffred grete hungre, and' how the goddes by them were confounded': capitulo xij

Whan the day was comen, and thadmyral sawe not Marpyn thenchauntour retorne, he was moche abasshed, and demaunded brullant, Sortybrant, and hys other lordes, counceyl what he shold doo, consydered that Marpyn was not retorned. Sortybrant sayd: "Syr admyral, knowe ye for certayn that the thief is deed, sythe he is not retorned and comen; but I counceyl you that ye doo sounne your trompettes for tassemble your subgettes, for tassaylle the toure and confounde the crysten men." And wyth slynges and other engynes they doo caste stonnes dertes enuenymed, but blessyd be god! the frensshe men doubted them no thyng. After they had contynued the syege a whyle, brede and wyn began to faylle to the barons and maydens, in suche wyse that they had noo thyng to ete. Thenne the sorowe of the maydens, whyche were so fayre ful of compassyon, was ouer grete, and were al desolate. And emonge the other, the noble florypes was moche dysplaysaunte for the necessitye of the frensshe men, of hyr self, and of hyr damoysselles. often tymes se swowned fyl to grounde as dede: Guy of bourgoyne, hyr spouse that sold be, (*Note: "hyr spouse that shold be:"* Fr. *son espoux advenir* . Compare p. 134, l. 27.) took hyr vp moche swetely, and recomforted hyr to hys power, sayd to hys felawes: "My brethern lordes, ye see the necessitye that we suffre; it is now thre dayes passed syth we had ony brede. And yet it greueth me more for these damoysselles than for my self, And I say you for trouthe that I may no lenger endure but yf we do otherwyse. And be ye sure, that I had leuer to put my body in auenture to be hurt and wounded mortally, than I sold abyde here wythin enclosed wyth thys melancolye. Wherefor, I say, late vs goo oute for to gete somme vytaylle; for better is to vs to deye wyth honour than to lyue with same." Al the frenssh men were of thoppynyon of guy. There vpon Florypes sayd: "My lordes, I wote now wel that your god is of lytel power, whan he gyueth to you none ayde ne comforte; And I say you wel, that yf ye had adoured our goddes, they had pourueyed for you mete and drynke." Tofore that se had fynysshed hyr wordes, Roulland ansuerd and sayd: "Madame, I praye you that ye sewe to vs your goddes that ye speke of. And yf they haue the power that ye say, that they may gyue to vs mete and drynke, that they do soo moche that the puyssaunce of fraunce come hyther for to socoure vs, we sal al byleue on them without varyeng." The mayde sayd: "Anone ye shal see them," Incontynent after that she had taken the kayes, se ladde the barons vnder the erthe, and shewed to them the goddes of the sarasyns, whiche were in a place moche noble, precyous, and ryche. And there were in grete mageste, Appolyn, Mahoun, and Termagaunt, the god Margot, and Iupyn, and many other, whyche were alle massy of fyn golde of Arabye, enorned wyth many Jewellys, Odoraunt of bame and encenc. and many other tresours were there assembled. Guy of bourgoyne sayd, whan he sawe soo grete tresour: "A! lord god, who wold haue wende that in thys place had be so grete rychesse assembled? Wold god that Rychard of normandy had now Iuppyn in hys cyte of Roan, For he shold wel accomplysse wyth it the chyrche of the holy Trynyte. And that kyng charles had thother goddes, he sold repayre ageyn þ^e chyrche of rome whyche is destroyed. And with the remenaunte he sold make men ryche, and to sette them in good poynte." Florypes ansuerd and sayd: "Syr Guye, ye speke vylaynsly ayenst the goddes; crye them

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

mercy adoure them, to thende that they enclyne them to you to doo you comferte." guy sayd vnto hyr: "I can not praye to them, Madame, for I see theyr eyen al a-slepe, and ye shal see that they may not here ne see." and therwyth he smote Iupyn, And Ogyer danoyes smote margot, that they flewe to the erthe, and were anone alle to-broken. Wherefore Roulland sayd to the doughter: "In trouthe, madame, I see that ye haue goddes that be not worth. Of them that been fallen to therthe I see not one of them remeue, ne make semblaunte to releue hym." Fro thenne forthon Florypes had al theyr goddes in despyte, and byleued in Ihesu Cryste, sayeng thus: "I see, syr Roulland, that ye say the veray trouthe; but yf euer I byleue on them, I wyl that my body come to an euyl ende. and with good herte I requyre that god that was borne of a vyrgyn, of whome ye haue enformed me, that he sende to you socours of fraunce, and that we fynde maner to gete vytalle for to satsfyfe our hungre."

How the peres of Fraunce went out of the toure, and dyd a grete bataylle, In which they recouerd' twenty sommyers charged' of vytaylle: capitulo xiiij

Whan Florypes had sayd, se fyl down to the erth a-swoune for sorowe anguysshe. Wherfor guy of bourgoyn wept moche soroufully for the loue of hyr. Hereupon Olyuer the courageous came tofore them and sayd: "My lordes, I you assure, by the god that suffred deth for creatures humayn, I had leuer that my body were quartred and smyton in pyeces than I shold suffre this pryson, but that I shold fyght quyckely wyth the paynyms;" semblably sayd rolland. Wherefore, wythout other delyberacion, they sette theyr selde in good poynte, and mounted on horsback, and aualed the brydge, wyth a stedfast courage made them redy. whan they were alle afore the toure of marble, Rolland sayd to the other: "Syr Naymes, or ye, syr Ogyer, it byhoueth that one of you (*Note: orig. yon.*) abyde for to kepe the place, that at the retorning we may entre surely." The Duke Naymes coude take noo pacyence, but that he answerd thus: "Syr Roulland, thynke not that I be so vnhappy of persone ne of lygnage that euer I shold be reproched, and that euer I shold be your portyer. I wyl not doo so in noo wyse: though I be olde, yet can I torne myn hors. For I am harde of synewes, and haue myn herte wel assured, and wyl be hardy ynough for to smyte vpon myn enemyes whan tyme shal requyre, ne doubtte ye no thyng therof." Rolland ansuerd: "syr, ye say wel, ye shal come wyth vs. Thyerry or geffroy, that one of you two shal abyde." but it was not their playsyr to abyde enclosed. Neuertheles, at the request of Rolland, tyerry abode with geffroy, whyche setted the yates surely after that the other barons were wythoute, whyche, eche with his selde tofore hym and swerde in hys hande, wente mustryng them tofore the castel. Thadmyral loking out at a wyndowe, knewe the frensshe men, Wherfor hastily he sente for brullant and Sortybrant to come to hym wyth other, to whome he sayd: "my barons and subgettes, the frensshe men ben comen, and me semeth they wyl fyght. yf they be not al slayn, i shal be euyl contente. Wherefore do sowne your hornes for tassemble your peple; ye tary ouer longe." And assone as they had so doon, a grete multytude of sarasyns were there assembled, came and assaylled the frensshe men. But rolland, that helde durandal in ys honde, with his felowes came vpon the mastyn sarasyns by suche a furour, that in a lytel whyle moo than an hondred were slayn. For vnhappy was he that came to socoure the sarasyns. Thenne came Clacyon, whyche was neuewe to the admyral, with xv thousand fygtyng men. And know ye for certayn, that in that tyme in spayn was noo sarasyn more doubted (*Note: "doubted:" feared. Fr. redoubte.*) than he. Whan the barons sawe hym come, Rolland escryed gherard, Ogyer Guy: "O noble knyghtes! in thonour of god, eche of you do so his deuoyr that at thys tyme, wyth vycorye, we may obtayne vytaylle for the maydens in the toure." That sayd, Rolland smote his hors wyth hys spores, and wyth durandal smote a fyers Paynym named Rampyn soo myghtely, that he cleft hede and body at a stroke; wherof they þat were there present were abashed. thenne the sarasyns doubted so strongly rolland, that there was not a man durst put hym self tofore hym, but yf he thought to deye. Gherard of mondydyer sayd: "My brethern lordes, Who wyl here-after haue playsyr be honoured, it is tyme that he sewe ym, for often by one vnhappy man a valyaunt man is in daunger." Wherfor with that word al these barons were moche more feruent than they had be, to thende that euery man sewed hym self suche as he out to be. after that þ^c batayll was fynysshed for that day, as god wold, the barons fonde by the tour aforesayd a grete auenture, For they sawe passe by the castel xx sommyers laden wyth vytayl, that is to say, brede, wyn, venyson, other vytaylles ynow, and a paynym conduyted them of margote vnto the sarasyns: but Incontynent the ledars of the sarasyns and of theyr vytayl were slayn anone of the barons, the duc Naymes Wylliam the scot conduyted ledde them forth. And Rolland and the other came auoyded the place, in suche wyse that they were dryuen in to the

tour; but this thyng was not doon without daunger and grete payne.

How guy of bourgoyn was taken of the sarasyns, beten vylaynously, and' demaunded' of thadmyral, and the complayntes that Florypes made for hym, other maters: capitulo xiiij

As I haue sayd tofore, the barons of fraunce, thus as they wente in theyr repayre, (*Note: "wente in theyr repayre:" went on their way back. Fr. *alloient en leur repaire.**) and ladde the sommyers afore sayd, there came so grete habundaunce of men of armes of the partye of kyng Claryon, that it was merueylle. There was thenne an harde and stronge recountre, in so moche that duc basyn was slayn, Aulbery hys sone. For whan he sawe his fader deye, Incontynent he fyl vpon hym, and there he was slayn and abode. and yet thys was not the moost harm, For the noble guy of bourgoyn, after that he was menaced of kyng Claryon, he auauced hym for to smyte hym. that came hym so euyl to passe, that hys hors was slayn vnder hym of the paynmys, sodeynly he was enuyronned of moo than an hondred knyghtes sarasyns, whyche took hym, took of hys helme fro hys hede, after bounde hys eyen, so that he saw nothyng, and ledde hym forth, hys handes bounden behynde hym at his backe. and whan guy sawe hym thus deteyned, he began to crye wyth an hye voys: "O Ihesus, veray god, whych hast made formed me! whyther goo I now, that am euyl fortunyd? O Ihesus, comferte me! O noble Charlemayn, ryght noble emperour, and myn vncler, thou salt neuer see me!" The kyng claryon sayd to hym: "Fayr frende, no thyng sal auayle the, thy cryeng ne thy brayeng. I shal delyuer the al lyuyng to the admyral of spayn thys day, And to-morne thou salt be hanged." But now ye may wel thynke how the other peres of Fraunce, hys felowes, were euyl contente whan they sawe the Erle Guye soo prysonner. Neuertheles they dyd grete feates of armes or they were constrayned to entre in to the tour, assone as they were descended, the yates barred, eueryche went to dyner: and thenne floripes cam anon to rolland, said to hym: "syr rolland, I requyre you that ye say to me where is syr guye of bourgoyne my husbond become. I wote wel, whan ye departed hens, that he went wyth you emonge thother. Ye ought to brynge hym to me ageyn. I shal neuer be Ioyous at the hert tyl I knowe where he is." Rolland ansuerd: "ha, Florypes, curtoys lady! in hym trust ye no more, for certes ye haue lost hym. ye shal neuer see hym; the paynmys haue ledde hym maulgre vs, we knowe not what they wyl do wyth hym." florypes heer yng these wordes, for sorowe anguysshe fyl to the erth alle a-swoune more than iiij tymes as dede; but rolland, whych wepte for hyr, oft releued hyr: whan she was rysen, she began to crye with an hye voys: "O barons of fraunce, by that god that maad heuen erthe, yf I haue not guy of bourgoyn, to whome I ought to be maryed, I shal yelde thys toure or the nexte day be passed. O holy vyrgyn marye! I sold be espoused to hym, and for loue of hym be baptyssed and be crysten. Alas! our loues haue sone faylled. This sorowe hath made me wel to forgete the hungre that I haue had these iij dayes. Alas! I am vnhappy." Rolland myght not see the melancolye of thys Florypes, but promysed hyr to make hyr glad wythin ij dayes, for thenne atte ferthest se sold see syr guye at hyr playsyr, and that se sold no thyng doubt therof; "for knowe ye surely," sayd rolland, "I had leuer to be quarterd than he sold not come ageyn, he sal be rendred to you, or his deth shal be sore auenged. ,madame, ye knowe wel that your sorow wepyng may not brynge hym ageyn, ye wote wel that it is thre dayes passed syth we ete. we haue purchaced vytayl for vs these damoysselles, of whome ye see the pyte, late vs take pacyence of the lytel quantyte, be we contente to entretiene the lyf:" for ye out to knowe that they myght not recouere the sommyers with vytaylle, by cause of the trouble of guy of bourgoyne, whyche was deteyned prysoner. After that Rolland had said thys, the barons and the damoysselles thanked god of al, and fedde them suffysauntlye, in praysyng and lawdyng god deuoutelye.

Now late vs speke a lytel of Guye of bourgoyn, whiche was ledde tofore the admyral. moche troubled, dyscolourd, chaunged of vysage was the sayd Guye by cause he had not eten in thre dayes tofore, for þ^e daunger that he felte hym to be in the handes of his enemyes. there tofore the admyral he was al despoyled of his armes; thenne appyered his body wel membred, ballant demaunded what was his name who he was. the baron ansuerd: "Admyral, I fere not to say the trouthe; I am called guy of bourgoyn, subgette to the crowne of fraunce, cosyn germayn to rolland the valyaunt, which is the man that ought wel to be doubted." ballant ansuerd: "I knowe the wel ynough. it is more than vij monethes goon that my douter hath had the in grete loue, which dyspleseth me gretely: I know wel that se loueth the more than ony man lyuyng; I for that loue haue lost many men of grete

facion, am put out of my tour, the chyef strengthe of al my contreye. but yf al be yolden to me ageyn sortly, þou shalt be quarterd in sort tyme, dysmembred. more—ouer I demaunde þat thou say to me the trouthe, who been they that ben enclosed in the tour, of whom we haue ben assaylled with so daungerously." Guy ansuerd: "gladly I shal say to the. Be thou wel sure that rolland the valyaunte is there, Olyuer, his felowe, ryght courageous, Thyerry, duc of Ardayne, Rychard of Normandy, Gherard of Mundydyer, Naymes duc of bauyere, basyn the genewey, whom ye haue slayn; but, by the grace of god helpe of charles, his deth shal be to you dere solde." Thadmyral was ryt euyl contente of the menaces of Guye; Wherefore a moche fyers sarasyn took hys fyste and smote guye on the vysage in suche wyse that the blood yssued oute of hys nose mouth habundantly. wyth that stroke, guy was sette a—fyre for angre and furour, and lefte not for to be forthwith quartred,(*Note: "left not for to be forthwith quartred, &c.:"* he did not hesitate, though he should be at once cut to pieces. In the French, *et pour estre esquartelle presentement il ne se fist tenu quil ne prist celluy sarrazin.*) he was not holden, but that he toke that same sarasyn by the heyre wyth one of hys handes, and wyth that other hande he smote hym vpon the grete bone of þ^e necke behynde, that he brake it, And, wythoute moeuyng of hande or foot, he fyl down deed to the grounde tofore the admyral. Ballant was soo euyl contente wyth that stroke, that he was al enraged for the deth of the paynym, as for the mysprysyng that guy had doon in hys presence to—fore is eyen, and cryed with a loude voys that he sold be taken. assone as he had sayd the worde, the sarasyns as wulues enraged, whyche wyth theyr feet and handes al to—bete hym, in suche wyse that he knewe not where he was,(*Note: "whyche wyth theyr feet and handes al to—bete hym in suche wyse, &c.:"* Fr. *que des pies que des mains ilz le vont tant battre* = both with hands and feet they beat him, &c. Compare the corresponding passage in *Syr Ferumbras*, p. 90, l. 2790, and note.) And had slayne ym yf the admyral had not commaunded them that he sold not be put to deth in suche manere.

How the paynyms had' purposed' to haue hanged' Guye of bourgoyne, seeyng' the crysten men, whyche socoured' hym mytely: capitulo xv

After that guye of bourgoyn was wel bounden and straytly, Thadmyral sente to come to hym brullant of mommyere, Sortybrant of conymbres, and for many other of is counceyl, and sayd to them: "my frendes, I praye you that ye gyue to me counceyl what I ought to do wyth thys prysonner, whyche dothe me so grete reproche despysyng, as ye see and knowe." "Syr," sayd Sortybrant, "I sal gyue to you good counceyl. yf ye wyl byleue me, ye shal doo reyse vp a galowe tree nyghe to the dyches of the toure, in whych been the prysonners of fraunce, to—morne ye sal do hange this prysoner; see that ye haue in a secrete place, nyghe vnto þ^e said galowes, v thousand turkes, wel armed in good poynte: and I am sure that the freynsshe men be so hardy and oute of mesure.(*Note: "so hardy and oute of mesure:"* Fr. *si hardis et desmesurez.*) that, whan they shal see their felowe for to be hanged, they sal come oute for to socoure hym; your peple that shal be hydde in the busschement sal come out on them take them. Thenne shal ye haue them al surely, for to do wyth, your playsyr." this counceyl was approued by thadmyral to be good, was therwyth wel content; wherefore, wythoute takyng of ony other delyberacyon, the galowes were made as afore is sayd. ryght nyghe to the place was a lytel wode, lete put therin secretly xx M fyghtyng men, comanded them to be gouerned by the kyng claryon other capytayns. after, thadmyral made guy of bourgoyne to be ledde with xxx sarasyns vnto the galowes, whyche cessed not to bete and smyte on hym with grete staues, whyche greued hym sore: they bonde his handes behynde hys backe moche straytly. whan he felte a grete corde aboute his necke, and hys eyen bounden, sawe no thyng whyther he went, Thys thynkyng, wyth an hye voys he began to crye: "O redemptour of the world, my maker and my god, for whos name I am in payne, and goo to deye an euyl deth, the meryte of thy passyon take my soule in to thy kepyng, for the body taketh hys ende! And lyke as I haue nede of thy helpe, So I beseche and requyre the to counceyll and comferte me. O noble barons of fraunce, ye shal neuer see me: yf ye suffre me to be hanged, it sal be to you grete same. O Roulland, fayr cosyn, remembre me! or ellys shal ye neuer see me on lyue." he thus sayeng, and other pyetous wordes, Rolland was in a wyndowe, and behelde ouer a lytel roche, and sawe the galowes reysed. Wherefore he came to hys felawes and sayd: "I meruaylle moche what thys meneth, that I haue seen the galowes sette vpon the dyches. I wote neuer to what purpoos it is doon." Whan the other had seen it, Duc Naymes sayd to them, that withoute faute they were made for to hange on guye of bourgoyne. forthwith they saw hym comyng al despoyled, and was ledde toward the galowes; they knewe wel that yf he were not socoured and rescued, that he shold be hanged put to

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

deth. Whan the fayr florypes herde them plede, se came to them for to wete what it was; and after whan se sawe the galowes reysed, and guy, hir loue and tocomyng husbond, (Note: "hir loue and tocomyng husbond:" Fr. *son espouse aduenir*. Compare p. 124, l. 29.) so samefully ledde, ye may thynke in what estate she was reduced; and began to crye: "O noble knyghtes, shal ye suffre guy of bourgoyn your felawe to be hanged tofore your eyen? Truste ye none other, that yf he deye, by the same god that fourmed me I shal lepe out of the wyndowe, sal deye in desperacyon." (Note: "Truste ye none other, &c.:" be sure of this only, that if he die I shall leap out of the wyndowe, &c. Fr. *ne vous fies point que sil meurt*.) and after she came to rolland, kneled down on both hyr knees, and kyssed hys feet humbly, in sayeng: "Syr Rolland, in thonour of god I requyre the that it may playse the to take the payne for to rescowe socoure my loue guye, and ellys I am a loste woman. Thynke for to arme you, and I sal goo and make redy your horses, for the tyme is ouer sort; so that by the playsyr of god ye shal be there in tyme." Thenne Rolland his felowes armed them moche hastely, and gyrde theyr swerdes and seldes, and wente oute of the toure, and on hors backe sprange oute. And or they rode ony ferther, rolland sayd: "lordes, at thys houre lyeth our deth our lyf in suche wyse, that yf we haue not good conduyte (Note: *orig. boyal*.)loyal, we sal neuer retorne. We ne ben but x, the paynems ben Innumerable of grete force. In thonour of god I praye you, that alwaye we holde vs togyder, that eche take hede of other as moche as he may, For yf we be deuyded, we shal sone be taken and hanged. And on that other parte, yf one of vs falle to the grounde, that prestly he be reysed, And not to leue hym for lyf ne deth, And that none faylle other. And I shal be he that shal brynge you to—gyder by thayde of god; for I swere to you by my lyf, that as long as I may holde durandal, and may kepe the lyf in my body, ye shal haue of me a good deffendour and waraunt." and in lyke wyse sayd al the other. Florypes answerd: "my lordes, ye may tarye ouer longe;" se went in to hyr chambre, and opened a coffre, in whiche was the crowne of Ihesu Cryste, and moche reuerently they kyssed it sette it on theyr heedes. Wherfor with a good courage they yssued out, noo thyng dreddyng the puyssaunce of the paynmys. after, Florypes and hyr damoysellys lyft vp the brydge, sette fast the toure. The noble peres of fraunce, fayr and in good ordenaunce, wente toward the galowes alonge the medowes, the paynmys were vnder the galowes, and were besy to brynge vp guy of bourgoyn, which had hys eyen bounden, hys handes also, and a grete corde aboute hys necke. and whan Rolland sawe that, he hasted hys hors, the other after, began to crye to the paynmys sayeng: "ha! trayters, mastyns! It shal not be as ye thynk: ye haue begonne suche a thyng wherof ye sal repente." Of thys bruyt wich was made so Impetuously, the moost hardy of xxx that helde guye began to flee; and they were so hastely poursyewed that xx of them were slayn. here vpon they that were in the wode camen out, makyng a grete bruyt; and al afore came Cornyfer, a meruayllous paynym, vpon a morel of grete facyon, (Note: "a morel of grete facyon:" Fr. *moreau de grant fasson*.) And began to crye: "ha! ye frensshe men dysmesured! come ye for to socoure hym that is luded by thadmyral to be hanged? ye haue enterprysed a grete folye; For al ye shal be hanged wyth hym." Whan rolland herde the paynym so say, he was moche angry, helde durandal in hys hande, came ageynst hym as a wulf enraged. Neuertheles the paynym smote on his selde daungerously; but after that he was recoured, (Note: "after that he was recoured:" as soon as he had recovered himself. Fr. *aprez quil se fut recouure*.) he atteyned and smote the paynym so puyssantly that he clefted hys heed down to the body. and after that he was dede, rolland came rennyng vnto the galowes, and vnblynfelde vnbonde syr guye of bourgoyne, and bad hym holde hym by hym tyl he was armed. after that Roulland had slayn another paynym, Guye, beyng in thassuraunce of thother peres of fraunce, he armed hym Incontyent with tharmes of that paynym by the helpe of hys felowes, mounted vpon the Paynmys hors. but thys was not doon wythoute grete payne and meruayllous deffence that they made, for anone al the sarasyns that were in the wode came vpon the barons of fraunce, and dyd grete Inconuenyents. (Note: "Inconuenyents:" Fr. *inconueniens* = damage.) Neuertheles, by thayde of god, the barons were of so good gouernement of so entyer courage, of so meruayllous deffence and puyssaunce, that at that tyme they put soo many sarasyns to deth, that the place was al encombred, and al were empessed to goo further. Emonge whome guye of bourgoyne dyd meruaylles: for after that he was armed by the conseruacyon of hys felowes, he dyd gretely hys deuoyr, sayd to the sarasyns: "O ye traytres mastyns, I sal sewe you in thys Iourney that I am escaped fro your handes." by thus fyghtyng they made the sarasyns to withdrawe a grete bowe draught. They thus fyghtyng, on that other syde were moo than ten thousand sarasyns redy to empesse them the passage, that they myt not wythdrawe them. Wherfore Rolland, holdyng durandal in hys honde, seeyng that, called al ys felowes and sayd to them: "lordes, it is noo tyme now to wythdrawe vs, but of necessitye we must auance vs for our owne conseruacyon: yf we may gete the brydge, doubtte we no thyng, thenne may we wel saue vs." "Roulland," Sayd Guye of bourgoyne, "Ye knowe wel

How the paynmys had' purposed' to haue hanged' Guye of bourgoyne, seeyng' the crysten men, why⁶⁰ the socoure

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

that in the toure we haue noo thyng to ete, yf we were wythin, how shold we lyue? yet had I leuer to haue my body daungerously wounded in fygytyng vpon the sarasyns, than to deye for hungre were wythin, wythoute daunger. and yf it be the wylle of god that in thys day we shold deye, al be it at hys playsyr, and we shal take it a worth, as good and trewe knyghtes of god." Al the other barons were of hys oppynyon, goon forth in grete purpos for to bere them valyauntly. They beyng in thys purpos to bere them valyauntly, as sayd is, Florypes was in a wyndowe of the toure, and sawe Guye of bourgoyne hyr loue, wherof se was moche Ioyous, and cryed to hym wyth an hye voys, that hit wold plesse hym to come to hyr, sayeng, that yf she lyued, for the prowesse of the barons that hyr fader thadmyral sold ones be in hys daunger. (*Note: "cryed to hym wyth an hye voys, &c.:" Fr. *luy cria a haulte voix quil luy pleust de la venir baisier, en disant que selle viuoit pour la prouesse des barons que son pere ladmiral seroit vne ffoys en son dangier.* The whole passage is very obscure, nor does the corresponding line in *Sir Ferumbas* help much to make it any clearer.) Wherfor Ogyer the danoys sayd: "Lordes, haue ye not herde how nobly se speketh. She is wel worthy that we doo for hyr. And knowe ye that I shal not be at ease yf we thus retorne." Thenne, wythoute more langage, the frensshe men ronnen vpon the sarasyns hastely, of whome Roulland was alwaye formest, and made soo grete bruyt and descomfyture of paynims, that they eschewed made them to flee tofore him as the byrde tofore the sperhawke. Guye of bourgoyn came with a grete cours ageynst a paynym moche fyers, named Rampyer, and attained hym so harde on the somette of the heed, that he clefte hym to the myddel of hys body. Wherfore whan Roulland sawe hys grete valyaunce, he said to hym: "Guy, fayr cosyn, I haue wel seen how ye haue menaced the paynym. Ye haue so doon that Florypes the fayr lady ought to loue you and holde you ryt dere."*

How the peres of Fraunce aforesayd' were pourueyed' of vytaylles, and' after assyeged' and' foughten by the paynims: ca. xvj

Whan Florypes the curtoys, beyng wyth hyr damoysselles in the toure, sawe the barons of Fraunce to be assured tofore the castel, se cryed to hem hyely: "O ye lordes, I praye you to remembre to gete somme vytaylles or ye come entre herein, to thende that we deye not for famyne. Olyuer vnderstode wel the damoyssel, and also roulland, whyche sayd that se had wel spoken, and in tyme: "for yf we entre in to the castel, we may not departe wyth our ease," and therupon al the barons with one courage goon ageynst the sarasyns, smote on them brake theyr aray, in suche wyse pat they made them to voyde the place, to wythdrawe and goo backe a grete dele. and thus as they retorned vnto the toure, a ryght good aduenture came ageynst them. For xx sommyers passed forth by, which certeyn paynims ledde, whyche al were charged wyth wyn, brede, and flesshe habundauntly. And anone they that ledde them were slayn and put to deth, And thenne the barons enforced them for to lede them hastelye, and so conduyted them tyl they brought them in to the toure. in the waye as they retorned, they fonde the body of basyn whyche had be slayn the day byfore, which they took vp, and brought wyth them in to the toure, and were there in surete. For they lyfte vp the brydge, and entred, and after aualed the drawe brydge, and made faste the yates, and surely. And thus were they wel vytaylled for ij monethes more. ye may wel wete that thadmyral was not ouer Ioyous whan he sawe that Guye of bourgoyn whyche had ben in his subgectyon was wyth hys felawes, And also whan he knewe that they were furnysshed wyth vytaylle so habundantlye. Wherfor ryght angry and euyl contente dyd doo calle hys counceyl, and demaunded brullant of mommyere, and Sortybrant of Conymbres, and other of hys counceyllours, sayeng to them: "My barons, ye knowe that these frensshe men haue ryght euyl gouerned vs. They haue garnyssed the toure wyth brede, wyn, and other vytaylles: and yf by aduenture it come to the knowleche of kyng Charles, we shal be enpesshed, for he sal come socoure them, and we shal come make to hym contynuel resystence, For hys puysaunce is ouer grete, ye knowe it wel. Wherfore I am in grete thought and melancolye what we may best doo."

To thys, Sorty brant answerd sayd: "syr admyral, I counceyl that euery man be armed, and in grete poynte, for to sette vp the engynes to assaylle the toure breke it, after to make sowne and to trompe vp a thousand trompes and hornes Impetuously. And whan the Frenssh men shal here them, they shal be so aferdethat we at our playsyr shal mowe entre in to the toure." Brullant of mommyere answerd to hym sayd: "Sortybrant, frende! ye speke of a grete folye. Byleue not pat the frenssh men that be within the toure ben of soo feble condycyon that ye sal make theym

How the peres of Fraunce aforesayd' were pourueyed' of vytaylles, and' after assyeged' and' foughten by the p

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

aferde wyth blowing sownyng of hornes. Certeyn ye haue nothyng to fere them wyth, And I shal say to you the reason. The flour of the barons of fraunce is there wythin: the moost puyssaunt the moost noble Rolland is there, whych is so puyssaunt and courageous that who—someuer Ioyneth to hym, he putteth hym to deth: And there is the counte olyuer: knowe ye not of his grete fyersnes, whyce conquerd Kynge Fyerabras, the myghtyest of all the paynyms? And I swere to you by Mahoun that he is in theyr companye. For I haue herde say also that there is the counte of mondydyer, Gherard, whyche hath doon to vs grete dommage. Also there is thyerry, the duc of ardayne, and another fals olde olde knygt that named hym self Naymes, duc of Bauyere, semblably Guy of bourgoyne, whyche was taken from vs whan he was ledde to be hanged. And other ther be whyche I haue not named. There ben but xj, for one of them was slayn, and ye knowe wel they ben alle of grete resystance.

Roulland, the (*Note: orig. nenewe.*)neuwe of charles, is of soo grete fyersnes that he doubteth no man lyuyng, ne stroke ne sotte that is gyuen hym: and doubte ye not, that, yf they were al suche as he is, that ben in the castel, they sold chace vs oute of thys royame or they sold slee vs. And I knowe wel that theyr god waketh for them, for he hath ryt wel kepte them. Our goddes ben accursed and vnhappy, For it is longe sythe that they haue ony thyng holpen vs." Of these wordes that brullant thus sayd, thadmyral was passyng angry, sayd to hym: "ye haue ryght euyl and folysshly spoken." and so sayeng, he wold haue smyton ym wyth hys staf, but the kyng Sortybrant wythdrowe the stroke, sayeng: "Syr admyral, leue your angre, and late vs thynke for to assaylle thys toure, and late vs so do that these fals frenssh men be vaynquysshed and smyton in pyeces." and thus as he had said, thadmyral made to come hornes, trompettes, and other Instrumentes for to sowne to make bruyt and noyse, in suche wyse that al the sarasyns were there assembled, that they helde þ^e space of a myle longe aboute the toure. After, thadmyral made to come a man Ingenyous enchauntour, whyche was named Mahon, that made two meruayllous engynes, with couertures surely made kept them that were there vnder, that they myght not be hurte of the frensshe men. And by the moyen of these engynes they conquerd the fyrst wardes of the castel. wherfore the frensshe men, furyous and wode as lyons, came to the yates of the toure, the maydens also al armed, wyche with the barons dyd so wel theyr deuoyr, that he that was raught and smyton by them, was so terrybly hurt, that he ouerthrewe and fyl doun dede. For they were aboue on hys, and threwe doun grete stones, dartes of yron, other mortal engynes, wyth whyche they made contynuel resystance

How the toure was broken and' brente by enchaument, the barons in grete peryl of deth, and' restored' by assualte maad' on the Paynyms: capitulo xvij

The Paynyms perseueryng in thassault afore sayd, Thenchauntour came tofore the admyral, and sayd to hym: "Ryt dere syr, I haue made myn engynes al redy, by moyen of whyche I shal delyuer to you the frensshe men: make your men of armes to goo a parte, that I may haue somme to awayte on me." And whan they were alle redy as he had deuysed, he sette them rounde aboute the tour. And by hys crafte and arte he made a flamme of fyre so meruayllous, that þe pylers of marble other stones bygonnen to brenne make fyre at vtterauce, (*Note: "at vtterauce:" Fr. a oultrance = exceedingly.*) wherfore the frensshe men were so perturbed that the one sayd to the other, that by force they must yelde the toure, for they had no moyen to saue theyr persones. Wyth thys, floripes sayd to them: "lordes, esmaye you nothyng yet (*Note: "esmaye you nothyng yet:" Fr. ne vous esmaies eneore.*) vnto the tyme ye see more." And anone se wente, took somme herbes and other medecynes, dyd tempere them in wyn, For she knewe the manere how that fyre artyfycially brente the stones. thus she made this beurage; (*Note: "beurage:" Fr. beuraige, a draught.*) and whan it was caste vpon the fyre, it brenned nomore. Wherfore the admyral wende to haue been out of hys wytte for angre. But Sortybrant tolde hym that al was quenched by the moyen of floripes his doughter; wherfore thadmyral was of entencyon to make hys doughter to deye of an euyl deth. The kyng Sortybrant sayd that he shold do sowne his hornes and trompettes, and recommence the assualte al newe, and at that tyme by force the frensshe men sold be vaynquysshed: "For I am sure," sayd he, "that they haue nomore to caste oute vpon vs. For they haue nomore sotte ne stones, but al is faylled to them." And thassualte was made as it was ordeyned Impetuou, that it semed derke for the sotte of arowes, of dartes, stones, other engynes: in suche wyse that the grete quarters of the murayl walles fyl and tombled down to the erthe. the barons of fraunce

How the toure was broken and' brente by enchaument, the barons in grete peryl of deth, and' rest62ed' by a

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

moche abasshed, sayd one to another, that thenne they must nedes be vaynquysshed, For they sawe parte of the walles the pryncipal of the castel falle down.(*Note: "For they sawe parte of the walles, &c.:" Fr. car ilz vcoient a terre ruer les murailles principales du chasteau.*) And they beyng in grete thout, Florypes sayd to them thus: "Lordes, dysmaye ye noo thynge! thys toure is stronge ynough for to kepe vs yet. And of that other parte, the tresour of my fader is herin, which is in grete wedges and plates of golde buyllyon. late vs goo fetch it, And as wel may we slee the paynmys therwyth, as wyth stones, and better." Thenne Guy of bourgoyn, hyr loue, came to hyr wyth grete Ioye, kyssed hyr moche amerously and swetelye. And after se wente opened the toure and place where the tresour(*Note: orig. tresour.*) was Innumerable, and wyth grete quantyte therof they wente to the batylments of the toure, and threwe vpon the paynmys, in suche wyse that they made grete dyscomfyture. And more-ouer the paynmys, seeyng the golde falle on them in suche habundaunce, anone they cessayd their fyghtyng ayenst the frenssh men, And for the concupyscence of that golde they faught and slewe eche other. Wherefore thadmyral was so dysplaysaunt angry that he wende to haue dyed, and began to crye wyth an hye voys: "O ye barons sarasyns, leue ye thassaulte, whiche torneth to me grete dommage Innumerable. For I see that my tresour wasteth is loste, which I haue wyth grete payne(*Note: orig. payue.*) dyligence assembled, And had recomaunded it to my god mahon, and had made ym kepar of it, whyche how hath faylled me. but by my soule, yf I may take hym, and that he come in to myn holde, I shal make hym wepe." The kyng Sortybrant answerd: "Syr Admyral, be ye noo thynge ameruayllyd of your tresour, ne wroth ayenst Mahon,(*Note: "be yene wroth ayenst Mahon:" in the Sowdone*Balan smashes Mahound.) for he may nomore do; they may wel take it fro hym, for he is a-slepe; I byleue none other: for in tyme passed he hath wel watched kepte it; but those frenssh men ben so wyly theues þat they haue stolen it fro hym subtylly." Thadmyral beyng al angry bycause the nyght came on repayed(*Note: orig. And' repayed'.*) with his peple toward hys souper. After thys, whan thadmyral was sette atte table, Roulland, whyche was in the hye toure surely with his felowes, laye in a wyndowe for to ease hym; and as he thought was pensyf, he sawe thadmyral syttyng at the table through the wyndowe, and after cam to the other barons and sayd to them: "my lordes and brethern, I see that the Admyral is wyth hys pryncypal barons at souper, and thynketh to holde hem wel at his ease. and me semeth it shold be grete honour and prowesse to vs to make hym leue(*Note: orig. lene.*) his repaste." The other barons, hys felowes, were of hys accorde, hastily they armed them and put them in poynte, and fayr yssued out, comyng to the place where the admyral was. but the admyral, whiche was subtyl, apperceyued theyr feat, and sente hastily for a paynym, wyche was moche fyers, and was hys neuewe. And sayd to hym: "Espoullart, cosyn, peradventure the frensshe men purpose to dystrouble vs at our souper,(*Note: "the freusche men purpose to dystrouble vs at our souper:" Fr. les francoys nous veullent faire refrodier notre soupper = wish to make our supper cold.*)Therefore depresso the, and be redy anone, and doo so that they be taken destroyed." and anone he was redy. And forthwyth Espoullart took hys hors, and came ayenst the barons, holdyng in hys honde a dart of stele. And fyrst he encountred Rolland, and hytte hym in his selde in suche wyse that of the stroke he was al astonyed; but it came soo to passe that it touched not hys flesshe, ne he was not hurte. After this, Rolland came vpon the paynym, and gaf hym a good stroke that he made hym ouerthrowe fro hys hors; but the turke was so valyaunte, and a man of so grete myght, that moche lyghtly he remounted vpon hys hors. And Roulland came to hym, smote hym wyth hys swerde in suche wyse that the paynym wyst not where he was. And as he was fallyng doun of hys hors, Rolland moche puyssauntly caught hym, layed hym thwart vpon hys hors, and bare hym awaye. The admyral, seeyng thys, al in a rage escryed hys peple that they sold socoure hys neuewe. but they wyst not what to doo, For in defendyng them many of them were slayn and hurte wythoute nombre; wherfor of veray force the other paynmys must retorne:(*Note: "wherfor of veray force the other paynmys must retorne:" Fr. pourquoi force fut aux aultres, &c.*) rolland cessed not to renne tyl that he was at the toure. And whan al the barons of Fraunce were wythin, they sette the yates wel surely, and had noo feare of ony empesshement.

Here begynneth the thyrd' partye of the second' book which conteyneth xvj chapytres, And' speketh how the barons of fraunce were socoured the paynmys confused'.

Of the moeuyng of the peres of fraunce for to goo shewe theyr affayres vnto kyng' Charles; And' how Rychard of Normandy was ordeyned' for to goo: capitulo primo

The peres of fraunce beyng thus assyged and deteyned, as I haue said afore, had taken a turke moche fyers, and grete frende of the admyral, whome they gaf to florypes for to do wyth hym as it plesed hyr: they demaunded of hyr what man he was, of hys estate. Florypes ansuerd: "he is sone of myn aunte, neuewe to thadmyral, and he is ryche hath grete puyssaunce. And yf ye wyl doo grete dysplaysyr to my fader, put hym to deth." The duc Naymes moche wyse sayd to hyr: "Madame, it is not behoeful to put hym so to deth; but sythe he is a man of auctoryte,(*Note: "sythe he is a man of auctoryte:" Fr. puis quil est homme de audience.*) and hath audyence wyth your fader, we been the more Ioyous. and I shal say to you wherfore: yf peradventure one of vs were taken of our enemyes, by the moyen of this man he myght be rendred and chaunged for hym." And of thys conclusyon were contente al the peres of fraunce. Thenne after thys, Rychard of Normandy called the other his felawes, and sayd to them: "ye knowe wel how we ben here enclosed in thys toure. And I am wel sure that at the laste we must nedes faylle, and deye by these Sarasyns. We haue noo moyen by whyche we may saue our lyf; and me thynketh that it shold be good that we shold conclude to sende to themperour, to thende that he sold come and socour vs, or ellys of vs sal sone be an ende." The duc Naymes ansuerd and sayd: "Syr rychard, me semeth ye speke of a grete folye. For there is noo man here wythin, that wyl take vpon hym for to do this message that ye speke of. For ye see that the contree is al couerd with sarasyns. for assone as he sal be oute fro vs, it is Impossyble to escape wyth hys lyf. And be ye sure, but yf god doo for vs and sewe hys grace, we shal neuer departe fro hens." herupon Florypes sayd: "I can not say at thys tyme none other thyng, but that we lede the moost Ioyous lyf that we may, as longe as we shal mowe endure. Ye haue here fayre maydens, eche of you take one at hys playsyr." Thenne Rolland and his felowes, for these wordes of Florypes were reioyced, and thanked preyed hyr affectuously. Thyerry the duc of Ardayne, whyche was moche angry, sayd: "My brethern and my lordes, I am in grete thought, For we be faste sette here wythin, and knowe wel that in sorte tyme we shal be dyscomfyted: we haue therof experyence ynough tofore our eyen. late us soo conclude that our fayte may be notefyed vnto charles, that he or hys pussyaunce may come socoure vs." Ogyer ansuerd and sayd: "for to sende to charles, there is none here soo hardy that dare presume it ne take it on hym." "Yes," said rolland, "I shal do it, and shal enterpryse it myself to goo to hym to morn, and sal doo my deuoyr." The duc naymes, or he had fynysshed hys wordes, ansuerd and sayd: "Syr rolland, dysplayse you not, for emonge vs ye are the moost vncouenable for to goo thyder: for whan the Paynymys shold knowe it, we shold not be redoubted as we be. And whan we haue you wyth vs, we been in surete, and our enemyes in drede of vs." Guyllam profred hym self to goo forth gladly, Soo dyd Gherard; Semblably guye abandonned hym self to goo(*Note: "abandonned hym self to goo:" offered himself, volunteered.*)wyth good affectyon, but Florypes wold neuer consente therto. Neuertheles, after many dysputacyons, rychard sayd for conclusion: "My lordes, ye knowe that I am of grete parentage, haue a sone of grete noblesse, suffysaunt to bere armes, and as I suppose, he shal be valyaunte. And yf it happene that in doying thys message I be taken slayn of the paynymys, After my deth he may receyue hold, myn herytage in my name, and doo seruyce to Charles. And I ought wel to doo it, for to doo playsyr to Charles aforesayd. For whan he had gyuen to me my lande, and possessed me in my contrey, I wold not accepte it but by one moyen, which is suche, that yf it happed, a strange man not subgette to my contreye, that he were bonde, of thral condycyon, and yf he duellyd a yere in my londe, that after he sold be free al his lyf, many other thynges:" thenne thus it was concluded that rychard shold goo forth on the message. But Rolland maad hym to promyse tofore his departyng, that he shold not tarye in ony place, ne sojourne nowhere, vntil the tyme that he were with Charles, but yf he were greued in hys persone(*Note: "greued in hys persone:" wounded. Fr. greue de sa personne.*) or deteyned prysoner. Rychard promysed it sware, as it is afore sayd. Thenne Rychard, after his oth made, sayd that, "now we haue not to sorowe, but the maner how I shal mow departe and passe forth, that the men of armes see me not; for yf I be knowen by them in ony wyse, It shal be Impossyble to me to resyste them." Rolland sayd: "by my fayth, I shal say myn opnyon here vpon. I counceyll that to morn erly we be wel armed, and we sal goo out and make a cours vpon the sarasyns, do greteley our deuoyr, they sal be besy with vs for to defende them hurte vs. Rychard sal departe passe forth leue vs, we sal remyse vs to—gyder for to retorne in surete. in the mene whyle Rychard, that

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

knoweth wel the region, sal mowe be wel ferre forth on his waye tofore they shal know ony thyng therof; and if it playse god hys swete moder, he sal saue hym self, by suche manere, that in shorte tyme we sal haue Ioye consolacyon that we sal hastely goo out surely." Thys sayeng, the peres of fraunce, seeyng that thys thyng was not yet achede surely, begonnen al to wepe tenderly for the pyte of theyr affayre. The noble duc(*Note: orig. dul.*) rycharde, seeyng his felowes wepyng for hym, sayd to them: "my lordes, ne doubte ye noo thyng! yf god gyue me the grace, to whom I comaunde my self, that I may passe thys hoost and thys contreye, and in especyal that I may fynde myself a-lyue by-yonde the brydge(*Note: orig. brydde.*) of mantryble, I may wel ensure you that I shal bryng you socours in suche wyse that by the grace of god ye sal sone be delyuerd." The barons ansuerd to hym: "Thesus, by hys myght and puyssaunce, graunte you wel to goo, better to retorne!" After this conclusyon they sayd nomore: the nyt cam on, eueryche of them went to hys repayre, vnto atte morne for to begynne to complysse theyr enterpryse.

How after that rycharde was departed, kyng claryon, a ryght myghty kyng', ranne after hym, the whyche was slayn by the sayd' Rycharde valyauntly, of other thynges: capitulo ij

Grete gryef and annoye cam to þ^e peres of fraunce whan Rycharde of Normandye sold departe for to goo to kyng charles. On the morne whan they came to the gates of the toure, in which they were in, they fonde grete multytude of peple sarasyns, whyche kepte the passage that none of the frensshe men sold yssue out. Wherefore by the space of ij monethes they coude not fynde the moyen to yssue oute; but on a day emonge al other, (*Note: "on a day emonge al other:" Fr. *ung iour entre les aultres.**) whan thadmyral was on huntynge a lytel waye of, that on a nyght the garde of the bridge was forgotten, Thenne the barons armed them mounted on horsback, and wente out rennyng vnto theyr lodgynges; but assone as they were seen of the paynims, they blewe vp hornes trompettes, began to sowne so terrybly, that anone peple Innumerable were there assembled for to renne vpon the peres of Fraunce. and thus whan they were al enclosed wyth theyr enemyes, that euery man was besy for to fyght, The duc Rycharde al in wepyng commaunded to god hys felowes, And secretly departed, and took hys waye at al aduenture. (*Note: "at al aduenture:" Fr. *a son aduenture.**) tofore that his felowes were at theyr lodgyng, many of the sarasyns were hurte slayn. and in this maner they reentred in to the toure surely, and mounted in to the bataylement, sawe a-ferre duc rycharde, whyche thenne had passed beyonde all the hoost; and in wepyng they recommaunded hym swetely to god many tymes. Rycharde of Normandye thus rydyng allone, had feare alwaye that he sold be assaylled. whan he had ferre ryden vnto a tope of a montayn, his hors was sore chauffed, bledde habundantly. Thenne he doubted entyerly (*Note: "he doubted entyerly:" Fr. *il doubta entierement* = feared greatly, or in his heart. See *Glossary.**) that he shold be empessed, and lyfte vp his mynde to heuen sayd: "O lord god, my creatour, to whom alle my wylle is ordeyned, thys day preserue my body from myn enemyes, in suche wyse that I lose not my lyf," blessid hym self with the signe of the crosse many tymes. he beyng in that place, the day appyered wel clerely; fyrst, brullant of mommyere apperceyued hym, after, sortybrant of Conymbres, whyche were bothe to-gydre, the whyche wente hastely to Kyng Claryon, a moche myghty paynym, neuewe of thadmyral, and brullant sayd fyrst to hym: "Syr Claryon, see ye yonde messenger, one of the prysoners of fraunce, whyche is departed fro his felowes, gooth toward Charles for socours? And yf ye see not for remedye, there may come therby harme to vs; for yf he recouthe theyr affayres to the kyng charles, It may happen to retorne to vs grete damage." Also sone as claryon herde these tydynges, anone he armed hym, mounted vpon hys hors, the moost merueyllous that euer was seen, For for to renne xxx leghe he wold not be wery; took hys selde his swerd of stele square sarpe, ranne toward Duc Rycharde as he had be enraged, other sarasyns folowed after hym. Rycharde mounted on hys hors, wythoute knowyng that he was poursyewed, sayd: "O my Creatour, holy Trynyte, gyue to me consolacyon grace, that I may see Charles the myghty Emperour, to whom I am sente for the rescows comfort of my felowes, whiche ben in the toure, sorouful and sore greued, and that I may make them Ioyeful," thus as he was in this thout he loked behynde hym, sawe the sarasyns come hastely after hym, whyche were by comyn estymacyon moo than xiiij M, Of whom the Kyng Claryon, neuewe of the Admyral, vpon the courser tofore sayd, came tofore the other a grete waye. Neuertheles, Rycharde beyng on a lytel montayn, byhelde the hoost of the paynims came ageynst hym with grete courage, ye may wel ymagyne in what estat his hert was. what thyng myt

How after that rycharde was departed, kyng claryon, a ryght myghty kyng', ranne after hym, the whyche was sla

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

he thynk that they wold do wyth hym, what tidynges his felowes shold haue of hym, whan he was there allone for tabyde susteyne the furour malyce of so moche peple? Thus ymagynyng that he myght not flee, Anone was claryon vpon the sayd coursour, whyche ranne faster and more swyftlyer than a grehounde; the whyche coursour was alle whyt on the one of hys sydes as a flour delys, on that other syde as rede as fyre enflammed, The taylor after the facion of a peacock, the croupe behynde somewhat reysed dropped, (*Note: "dropped:" Fr. platz = broad.*) as smal as of a partryche; grete thyes sort feet, platte rounde, wyth lytel eeres; the mane of the necke whyt, his nosethrylles large ample; he was tofore moche brode, had eyen grene clere, a lytel heed, a brode fronte, with a smal mosel; he was saddled with a sadle of yuorye, the raynes of þ^e brydle entrelaced with gold; styroppes of fyn gold; the poytral wel enorned rychely. was gyrde with iiij stronge syngles, had on hym moo than an C of smal bellys of fyn golde, sownyng moche melodyously. þ^e paynym smote hym with the spores moche sarply, in suche wyse that the hors made a leep more than xxx foot longe. And after escryed duc Rychard the noble knyght, sayeng wyth an hye voys: "by Mahoun, my souerayn god, thou messenger salt neuer acyue thyn enterpryse, For wythoute goyng ony ferther, thou shalte here ende thy lyf." whan rychard vnderstode hym, alle the blode in hys body was moeued chaunged, ansuerd: "Sarasin, wherfore arte thou of suche entencion ayenst me? What haue I trespaced to the? I neuer offended the, ne robbed thy tresour. I requyre the by loue that thou dystrouble me not; and yf thou suffre me to passe, I shal take it for a grete seruyse, I promyse to the that ones it shal be rewarded to the by me." The paynym answerd: "certayn, frensshe man, thou spekest of grete folye; of mahoun be I cursed yf I doo ony thyng for the. I shal not suffre the to passe for half the tresour of the world." Also sone as Rychard knewe hys entencyon, he auanced ayenst hym, the paynym came to Rychard, wyth hys swerde he smote hym hard vpon hys selde; but it was so harde that it wente not thurgh. here—vpon richard, which was ful of grete yre ayenst the paynym, by effectuel deth came to hym wyth hys swerde which was trenchaunte, as the hors lepe forth, the paynym, lyfte vp is hede, richard attained ouerthwart the necke (*Note: "attained ouerthwart the necke:" Fr. lattaint du trauers du col .)* so ryt in a Ioynte, that he smote of is nede, in suche wyse that it flewe ferre fro the body, ye, wel a spere lengthe, he put þ^e trunke of the body to the erthe al dede; forthwyth he descended fro hys hors, mounted vpon that the good courser of the Paynym, whyche was the best hors of the world. Thenne Rychard myght wel say that he was neuer soo wel pourueyed of an hors; For he was so myghty, that yf he had born vij knyghtes armed vpon hym, he wold not haue swette a droppe of water; for to swymme passe a depe ryuer, ther was noo hors lyke hym. after that he was thus horsed at his ease, he said to is owen hors by moche good affection: "O gentyl hors doulstyn, for the I am sorouful that I may not conduyte the in to som place at my playsyr. I praye to God of heuen that he drawe þ^e in to suche a waye that þou mayst come in to the hondes of crysten men serue them. in many grete bataylles euyl passages thou hast wel serued me, of thy grete seruyce, as moche as apperteyneth to me I thanke the gretely." here vpon he wente and rode forth hys waye. And anone the sarasyns that followed after, came fonde the kyng Claryon deed, theyr mayster, of whos deth they were so surprysed of melancolye of sorowe, that they coude doo none other thyng but fyrst to renne for to take Rychards hors. But there was none soo hardy to approche hym ne sette honde on hym, but the hors maad grete deffence, took hys waye rennyng for to retorne to the place that he was departed fro.

How Rychards hors cam passed' thurgh thexcersyte of the admyral, was seen knowen of the peres of Fraunce, in soo moche that they thought that duc Rychard' had' been deed'; how the brydge of Mantryble was kepte: capitulo iij

Rychard of Normandye wyth his swerde in hys fyste rode hastely, the sarasyns whych ranne after hym came and fonde theyr kyng deed, of whome the hede was on that one syde of the waye, the body on that other. It byhoueth not to recounte the sorowe that they were in, whan the chyef of alle the sarasyns of myght and parentage was descomfyted and slayn; and for thyng that they coude do, they coude not reteyne Rychards hors. the fyrst that sawe the hors come rennyng was thadmyral, whiche called gorant, sone of kyng grehier, also sortybrant of conymbres, sayd to them: "by my god appolyn, whan I wel aduise and remembre me, I ought wel to loue my neuwe Claryon, and holde hym dere emonge al other. I see wel that he hath put to deth the messenger of the Frensshe men: that it is trouthe, ye may see his hors that yonder cometh." and thadmyrall commanded that he sold

How Rychards hors cam passed' thurgh thexcersyte of the admyral, was seen knowen of the peres of Fraunce

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

hastely be taken. but whan the hors saw that they wold haue taken hym, he ranne and smote out, cessed not tyl he cam to the yate of the castel in whyche the barons of Fraunce were enclosed. whan the frensshe men sawe thus the hors come, whyche was longyng to rychard, they were al affrayed and moeued, and came opened the gate, and anone he entred in; and after that the yate was sette, they arenged them aboute the sayd hors, for compassyon of sorowe, wepyng pyetously. And Duc Naymes spake fyrst and sayd: "Ha, Richard of Normandy! I praye to god that he be in thy comfort and that he haue pyte of thy soule. I knowe wel that for thy deth we shal neuer haue socoure, Ne of thy partye (*Note: "of thy partye:" = so far as thou art concerned. Fr. *de ta part.**) we shal neuer haue none helpe." Roulland and Olyuer heryng these wordes, also the other, wepte bytterly. here-vpon came florypes the curtoys in grete heuynes, and sayd to them: "Lordes, in the honour of god, leue your lamentyng and sorowe: we knowe not yet the trouthe of the mater." thus as they were in these grete thoughtes, the Sarasyns came, whyche had lefte Rychard ryde forth, And in grete sorowe torment brout the body of kyng Claryon. And whan thadmyral sawe them come, he beyng in the ethroclytes in hys entendement, (*Note: Fr. *Et quant admiral les vit venir tout ethroclite en son entendement.** I can make nothing of "the ethroclytes.") cryed and sayd: "and how is it? is myn neuwe in good poynte?" The sarasyns ansuerd: "Syr admyral, we may not lye to you. Claryon is dede, it nedeth nomore to demaunde therof." Thadmyral heryng thoo wordes, fyl doun to therth al in a traunse, and he swounded more than iiij tymes as he had been dede. thus emonge al the sarasyns was a grete wepyng, made grete sorowe. The sarasyns thus makyng thys lamentacyon, the barons of fraunce herde and vnderstood them, specially florypes, which knewe better the langage. after that se knewe the cause of theyr sorowe, se came to the barons, and sayd to them in spekyng to rolland: "Syr, knowe ye wherfore the sarasyns demene suche sorowe? it is truth that Rychard your messenger hath slayn the kyng claryon wonne his hors, to whom is none lyke ne pareylle of bounte in al the world. (*Note: "To whom there is none like or equal in goodness in the world:" Fr. *quil non y a point de pareil.**) as wel for þ^edeth of claryon as for the losyng of the hors, they demene make al thys sorowe torment that ye see here. Wherfore I praye you that euery man doo hys deuoyr, to lede a good lyf and to make good chyere." Olyuer sayd to rolland loyously: "O my felawe of armes, ye knowe not how glad I am of these tydynges that we here, I ensure you by my soule that I am as sure to passe thys daunger that we be in, as though I were in the strengest castel of fraunce. blessyd be richard of god, for he hath borne hym nobly!" and semblably sayd al the other his felawes. After that richard rode thus, thadmyral made a man to come to hym named Orages, (*Note: "Orages:" in *Sir Ferumbras*, 3823, Malyngras; in the *Sowdone*, 2145, Espyrd.*) made hym to take a dromedary hastely, comanded hym to bere his lettres to galafre, which kept the stronge brydge of mantryble: "I charge the to renne as faste as the dromydary may bere the, to mantryble, and say to Galafre wherfore he suffred the messagers of charles to come ouer the brydge, the whyche haue doon to vs so moche greuaunce and ennoyaunce, as thou can wel telle to hym. I swere by mahon my god, that he dyd a grete folye. sythe on that other parte the messenger of the frensshe men goeth thyder, and yf he recouthe his message to Charles, it myght happen he shold put me in subgectyon, Therefore say to galafre that he kepe soo wel the brydge, that noo persone passe: and say to hym more ouer, that, yf he do otherwyse, I shal put oute hys eyen, and make hym deye shamefully." "Syr admyral." sayd Orages the messenger, "I shal do your commaundemente; and I assure you I shal ryde as moche waye in one day as that other shal do in foure dayes. for. for to ryde an hondred leghes contynuelly, I shal neuer be wery." And thus he departed from the admyral vpon a dromydary, taryed not tyl he came to mantryble, and spake to Galafre, sayeng: "Galafre, I shal not hyde fro the that the admyral is not contente wyth the, by cause thou suffredest the frenss men to passe ouer the brydge, whyche haue doon to hym grete dommage, for they be lodged in the chyef toure, holden in their subgectyon the goddes, with floripes his douter, and haue slayn many of the moost valyaunte of the courte of thadmyral. the cause wherfore I am thus hastelye come, is thys: After me cometh a messenger, whyche is one of the barons of Fraunce, whyche gooth for to fetche ayde, vnto Charles theyr kyng; the whyche hath slayne kyng Claryon. wherfore kepe wel thys passage that he passe not. For yf thou doo otherwyse, thou salt not conne fynde the manere to saue thy lyf, but that thou salt deye vylaynsly." Of these wordes Galafre was perturbed and replenysshed of yre, for hys angre he made moche foule chyere, and began to scumme at the mouth lyke a bore enchaffed, and took a staffe, and had smyton the messenger yf it had not be letted by them that were presente. Neuertheles he mounted vpon a tourette, and with the sowne of a trompette he assembled many men of armes, whyche were in nombre xv M, whyche were anone of horsback, and passed the brydge. And whan they were ouer, it was anone lyfte vp, and they wente and rode here and there for to recouthe þ^e messenger of the frenssh men, yf by aduenture they myt fynde hym.

How Rychards hors cam passed' thurgh thexcersyte of the admyral, was seen knowen of the peres of Fraunce

How rycharde of normandye passed the ryuer of flagot by myracle, by the moyen of a whyt hert which cam tofore hym: ca. iiij

Rycharde of Normandye, messenger of the frensshe barons prisoners, rode in grete doubte, ye may wel thynke and ymagyne, how he onely by hym self myght passe the stronge and daungerous brydge. And in rydyng he behelde behynde hym, and sawe al the contree couerd wyth men of armes. thus byholdyng theym he was sore troubled in hys mynde, began to crye: "O Ihesus, kyng of glorye, at thys tyme be thou kepar of my body, conseruatour of my soule, For I see wel the declyne of my lyf. yf I put my self to fyght, I shal haue my hede smyton of; and yf I entre in to this hydous ryuer, I shal not conne passe ouer. Thus at thys tyme I muste nedes deye. And yf I by force returned to my felawes, I shold make a grete defaulte to therle Rolland, to whom I haue promysed(*Note: orig. pormysed'*.) faythfully to doo my deuoyr for to doo my message. Wherefore, my god, my maker, I wote not what to say, but that thy wylle be fulfilled and doon of me. thou knowest myn entencion: after the same gouerne me!" he beyng nyghe the ryuer, the sarasyns maden grete bruyt in comyng to hym, emonge whom a neuewe of the admyral auanced hym to renne ageynst hym, cryed wyth an hyghe voys: "O messenger, what someuer thou be, thynke for to dye! thou hast now ryden ouer ferre; now is þ^e houre come that the deth of kyng claryon sal be aduenged." These wordes so herde of rycharde were not to hym ouer playsaunt; but he was euyl contente, and sodeynly he spored his hors ayenst hym, holdyng a swerde in hys honde, square sarpe, whych he had conquerd of Claryon: and came to hym, and smote hym so daungerously ayenst the breste, that it perced thorough the selde in to hys body, that he fyl down to therthe al deed; after took hys hors by the brydle, whyche was ryche of gelde, and went to the ryuage of the water, and byhelde it that it ranne lyke a quarel out of a crosbowe, and rored lyke thundre, in suche wyse that galeyne ne other engyne myght not goo surely vpon hyt.

Thenne by grete contrycion of hert he recommaunded ym self to our lord, that he sold preserue hym from deth tyl that he had sayd hys message to the Emperour Charles. Thenne god of heuen, that neuer leueth hys seruauntes at their nede, sewed vnto hym a grete token of loue that he had to Charles. for Rycharde of Normandye beyng in thys medytacyon and thought for to passe ouer, god sente a whyte herte which passed tofore rycharde: in comyng(*Note: "in comyng, &c.:" as we should now see, en passant, or by the way. Fr. en venant vous debuez scauoir.*) ye ought to wete that the ryuage of the water was moche hie, ye, as hie as a man from bynethe myght caste vp a stone wyth hys honde. And the ryuer began to aryse soo hie that it flowed ouer the banke, and the herte entred in to the water;(*Note: The miracle of the water rising to a level with the banks, and afterwards subsiding, is not given in the English metrical versions of the romance. See Dr. Hausknecht's note to the Sowdone, l. 2810.*) and Rycharde loked behynde hym, sawe many sarasyns come in a grete multytude for to put hym to deth; and thenne he recommaunded hym to god wyth good hert, and made the sygne of the crosse vpon his body, hauyng in hys hert the holy name of Ihesus, that he myt perseuere fro drede in suche wyse that he myght passe ouer the ryuere; and soo toke the water folowed the hert. The paynymys seyng that, were al abashed and troubled, and there was not one that durst folowe hym. Fro Incontynent the water aualed, and returned in to hys former estate and beyng. Thenne the paynymys made grete duel and sorowe by cause they myt not haue the messenger. Galafre, whyche that was moost wroth werst contente, cam to the bridge and aualed the chaynes, and commanded the paynymys, vpon payne of deth, that they sold not cesse tyl that rycharde were taken, or ellys they shold be all in the Indygnacyon of thadmyral, and in daunger to be loste. Rycharde of Normandye came ouer in good poynte, and deuoutelye thanked god of the grace that he had sente to hym, and descended fro hys hors for to vngyrde and lose hys saddle. And after resengled hym, and took his hors and rode forth at hys ease, and ladde that other hors on hys ryght syde. doubted thenne nomore, For in sorte tyme he supposed to fynde thexcersyte of kyng Charles. The paynymys seeyng thys, returned soroufully, wente to vname them, For other thyng coude they not do.

How charles was in purpoos to retorne, wythout goyng ony ferther, by the counceyl of ganellon traytour, and his felowes; other maters: capitulo v

In as moche as rycharde rode, whyche was moche wery; and out of grete thought Themperour Charles was passyng moche pensyf sorowful for hys barons, whyche were deteyned of thadmyral. And he, seeyng that he had no

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

tydynges, he sente for to come to hym Ganellon, Geffroy, dantesuyle, (*Note: "dantesuyle." In the original French, dautefeuille, evidently misread by Caxton.*) aubert, machayre, and many other. and emonge the other, cam reyner, fader of Olyuer, to whome he sayd: "lordes and frendes, I am in moche grete trybulacyon. the cause is ynough apparent, whyche is of my specyal barons, whyche were sente as messagers to ballant, thadmyral. I see that no persone reporteth ne bryngeth ony tydynges from them; wherfore knowe ye, that of my dede that I dyd I despyse my self. Thenne by more strenger reason the other ought more to despyse me. And I you ensure that I sal neuer regne more, but sal leue alle. Take ye there, loo! the crowne of mageste, take it! For I depose my self from hens forth." Ganellon was there wich was Ioyeful, what someuer semblaunt he made, and sayd: "syr emperour, yf ye byleue me, I shal gyue to you good counceyl. Anone comaunde that our lodgys and habytacyons here be take vp, that euery man trusse hys gheer vpon the sommyers, and thynke to retorne. For yf ye goo ony ferther, ye shal neuer retorne. The contree of Aygremore is moche stronge; And sythe that, ballant the admyral is of grete fyersnes, and wyth that, he hath alle the paynymys sarasyns capytayns in to hys ayde; And by cause that Fyerabras ys sone is deteyned by you, maad crysten, so moche more is he affectyoned ayenst you: And on that other parte your barons be not a-lyue, I ensure you: Retorne we in to Fraunce. We haue lefte there many of our chyldren and parents that shal wexe grete; and or it be twenty yere, they shal bere armes. And thenne they with vs shal come in to spayne, for to conqueste the londes and seygnouryes that we haue enterprysed, And shal recouere the holy relyques, of whome I haue grete pyte. And more ouer ye sal reuenge the deth of Roulland, the noble erle, for whom ye haue thys melancolye; For certayn ye sal neuer see hym." Whan Charles herde these wordes of Ganellon, he was smyton wyth soo grete sorowe, that after, he fyl doun (*Note: orig. donn.*) in a swoune, And spake not the space of a grete houre; and in wepyng bytterly he sayd to hym self: "O poure caytyf and vnhappy, what shalt thou do? yf thou retorne, þou salt be dysonoured. yet were it better to lose the lyf than to be thus samed." After that he was comen to hymself, he sayd to hys barons that were there: "Loo! ye see the counceyl that ganellon gyueth to me, whych in no wyse may playse me. yf I retorne, wythout takyng vengeaunce of my noble barons which ben thus deteyned, there shal neuer man sette by me, but I sal be samed, and wyth good ryght." Machayre, aulbery, and geffroy, and other, moo than an hondred, wyche al were parentes traytres wyth Ganellon the moost parte, also were moche myghty to-gyde, sayd alle wyth one consente: "Syr emperour, purpose ye not to do otherwyse than ganellon hath sayd, For he hath spoken wysely; and therfor conclude ye to retorne in to fraunce wythout gooyng ony ferther on. we ben xx thousand that haue made oth to-gyde that, for ony thyng that ye say or do, we shal not goo noo ferther. For sythe that Roulland is dede, they haue loste theyr comforte, hym that was chyef of the conseruacyon of their persones." Charles, al heuy, answerd: "O god of heuen, how am I determyned? (*Note: "how am I determyned:" Fr. comme suis ie déterminé.*) yf I retorne wythoute to auenge my barons, I shal doo pourely, sythe they haue susteyned borne vp the crowne Imperyal and my wylle, and I now to retorne wythoute to auenge them He that gaf me suche counceyll, loueth me but lytel, I see wel." Reyner of genes, fader of Olyuer, aroos vp and sayd: "O Emperour, yf thou byleue these wordes that haue ben said to the, thy gouernaunce sal be so euyl, that by them al fraunce shal be wasted brought to nought. And who someuer haue damage, they retche not, but passe ouer lightly." Thenne they that were of the partye of the traytres cam forth and sayd: "Reyner of genes, ye haue lyed of that whiche ye haue sayd. And yf it were not by cause the kyng is present, ye shold lose your hede and it shold be smyton of. we knowe wel what ye be: your fader garyn was neuer but a pour man and of lowe condycyon: Alle your lygnage ne ben but people of nought." The duc Reyner myght not suffre thys Iniurye, but came to hym, and smote hym wyth hys fyst in suche wyse that he ouerthrewe to grounde; and there were made many reproches and ylle talent, in so moche that yf the kyng had not be present, and made the pees and tranquylte, they had slayn eche other. For anone there were moo than a thousand of the lygnage of ganellon. But fyerabras, which was present, blamed them strongely; And on that other syde the kyng sware by hys crowne that yf there were ony persone that began bataylle or fyght, that he shold do hym be hanged as a theef attaynt, (*Note: "as a theef attaynt:" Fr. comme larron prouue.*) of what someuer estate that he were. and by thys they were aferde for to offende, and was nomore spoken. Not-withstandyng that, the counceyl was taken emonge them, that they shold put Reyner to deth as sone as they shold be in Fraunce. Charles sent for them to come to hym, and said to them: "ye haue done to me a grete same; but yf it be not amended now tofore me, I shal do opene Iustyce. Always nedes must the kynge be obeyed." in suche wyse that alory on hys knees cryed duc Reyner mercy, but he wold neuer haue doon it yf it had not been for to appease the furour of kyng charles; thus they maad the pees. And after themperour sayd his oppynyon, that yf he torned backe that it sold be to hym grete dysonour.

How rycharde of normandye passed the ryuer of flagot by myracle, by the moyen of a whyt hert which cam tofor

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

Therfor cam geffroy daulteuylle, fader of Ganellon, whyche sayd: "Syr Emperour, I am olde, and haue seen moche thyng, wherfore me semeth that ye ought to byleue me as wel as ony persone of your companye. ye knowe wel that I and Ganellon my sone haue alwaye loued you, And, how that it be that he counceylleth you to retorne, hath good ryght. I haue now my body alle to-brused for beryng of armes; and be ye sure, that tofore that twenty yere be passed, the chyl dren that be now in fraunce shal be grete myghty to bere armes, and they shal be so grete a companye, that lytely ye shal mowe conquere spayn, and auenge the deth of rolland and of hys other felowes." Whan Charles vnderstode these wordes, he wepte bytterly, saw that by force he must ayenst hys wylle retorne in to fraunce, and leue hys enemyes. Wherfore by the sowne of trompettes was cryed the retraytte. And anone the artylleryes were assembled and the harnoys trussed, wherof the companye of traytres were Ioyous, and many of the other were euyl contente, in especyal Reyner, whych retorned withoute hys sone Olyuer, wherof ye may wel thynke in what estate was hys hert, by cause he hath (*Note: orig. hast.*) loste al hys comforte.

How after the complaynte of Charles, Rychard come vnto hym, whyche tolde to hym thaffayres of the peres of Fraunce: capitulo vj

Whan charles was mounted on horsback, and in wage for to retorne, he took remors of Rolland, Olyuer, and of other, how he lefte them withoute to do otherwyse his deuoyr: he taryed sayeng: "O vnhappy that I am, I may wel sorowe whan I now leue the men that I loue best in the world, and retorne fro them, whan I ought by good ryght to auenge them. I shal be reputed for a fool, sore blamed. O Rolland, how I haue loued you! may euer your vncle so longe lyue that he may see your deth auenged? God deffende (*Note: "deffende:" forbid. Fr. ne plaise pas a dieu que iamais.*) that euer I bere crowne on my hede, seen the pouerte of my fayte." thys sayeng, almost he fyl a swoune to the erthe for the dysplaysaunce that he had: moche heuynes had he that tyme. "Alas!" sayd Charles, "Rolland, I was moche euyl auysed whan I consented that thou soldest goo to thadmyral! wel am I cause of al your perdycon!" In makynge thys heuynes, the hoost made soo grete bruyt to retourne, that it was meruaylle. thus as they began to ryde forth, The emperour loked toward the eest, and from ferre he sawe rychard come rydyng vpon an hors sore rennyng, and helde in his hande a swerde al naked. wherfor the Emperour sente for to come to hym the moost grettest lordes of hys companye, and made thoost to tarye and goo no ferther forth. "I see," sayd he, "yonder comyng a man on horsback, which maketh grete haste, and ledeth on hys ryght syde a fayr courser, as me thynketh; and he semeth by hys rydyng that he is Rychard of normandye. Now I praye to god almyghty that thys day he sende me tydynges of rolland and of the other barons, that they be alyue." Thenne the hoost taryed, and anone came richard, whyche maad hys hors to lepe moche gentyly tofore the kyng, whome he salewed moche humbly. And thenne charles sayd to rychard of normandye: "Sone of noble baron, how is hyt wyth you? what is bycomen of my neuwe Rolland and of myn other barons? be ye come allone? be they alyue or dede? telle me, I praye you." Rychard ansuerd: "Syr Emperour, Rolland the other, whan I departed fro them, were al hole and in good poynt, and been in aygremore, in a stronge toure, bysyged by ballant the admyral of spayne and fader of Fyerabras; there been aboute them an hondred thousand sarasyns. And knowe ye for certayn that thadmyral is a man moche fyers terryble, whyche hath sworn by his god mahoun and Termagaunt, that he shal neuer departe fro thens but that they shal be hanged by the necke. And on that other syde your barons haue wyth them floripes, the curtoys daughter of thadmyral, the fayrest that euer was seen, the whyche hath in hyr kepyng the relyques that ye soo moche desyre to haue. and sende you worde by me that ye sold come and ayde them for to saue theyr lyues. And yf it please you to remembre them, ye sal mowe conquere the contreye of spayne, other goodes ynough." Grete consolacyon had kyng Charles, And thenne he conceyued wel that Ganellon was a traytre and ful of wyckednesse, And neuer after hys counceyll ne sayeng shold be herde ne alowed in hys courte. For he sawe wel, that as for hym it abode not but Rolland and hys felowes sold haue dyed. "Now gentyly Rychard," sayd the kyng, "is the toure in whyche they been bysyged, stronge wel garnysshed of vytayl for to defende them ony whyle? yf they may holde vj dayes, I sal make thadmyral to dye, and al hys complyces." "Syr," ansuerd Rychard, "I shal say to you the trouthe. they haue noo vytayl but they gete it with the swerde. thadmyral is meruayllously fyers and ful of cruelte, and hath of people a multytude Innumerable, the whyche holde the space of two myle. the town is stronge, where he habyteth, also there is on thys syde of the toun the brydge of mantryble, where the passage is moche daungerous. and the walles of that cyte ben made of marble cymented and fortifyed with toures, and there

How after the complaynte of Charles, Rychard come vnto hym, whyche tolde to hym thaffayres of the peres of

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

renneth a ryuer ryt hydous, whyche is named flagot, and is of depthe of ij speres of lengthe, renneth so fast and brayeth, that there is noo bote ne syppe may passe theron. and the brydge is half a myle longe, And in the myddes there is a toure(*Note: orig. tonre.*) of marble so stronge that it may not be beten doon; the yate is garnysshed kepte wyth barryers of yron fast locked. The portyer that kepeth thys plase is a paynym hydous and grete, massyf, stronge and felonous, whyche better resembleth the deuyl than ony man or persone. he is as blacke as pytche boyled, hath x thousand knyghtes in his companye. wherfore I wote wel that by force we may not passe; For by ony assaulte that may be doon to them, they doubte it not. And yf we passe not by engyne and subtyllte, we may not goo ouer the brydge; For by force we may noo thyng do. but it byhoueth vs to passe in guyse of marchaunts; And somme of vs shal be wel armed vnder our clothes; and there aboute we sal were a mantel of cloth, theyr swerdes vnder, And there shal come after vs grete sommyers charged with marchaundyses. And ye wyth al the chyualrye shal tarye in a lytel wode, that euery man be in grete poynte. after whan we haue gotten the fyrst gate, I shal sounne blowe myn horne, And wyth motye(*Note: "wyth motye:" Fr. a ce mouuement vous viendrez.*) ye shal come on. And thus we shal haue the passage, by the playsyr of god, and we shal come to our entencyon." Thys councyl was wel approued by the kyng Charles, whyche ofte blessyd rycharde by cause he had so wel sayd, thenne he resembled al his peple. The standardes were reysed, and the loryflam dyscouerd. Rychard took hys hors, and gaf it to duc Reyner, And wente bonde heye and grasse to-gyde, and made trusses vpon many sommyers, in the guyse of marchautes. euery man wel armed vnder hys cloke, swerde gyrde, and so take theyr horses, to thende that they sold not be espyed: and were in nombre v hondred knyghtes, alle men of grete facyon, and dryue tofore them the sommyers for a good enterpryse. Rychard went tofore as chyef enterprenour, duc howel of Nautes folowed, Guye de vallee, Ryoll du mauns, Duc Reyner, fader of Olyuer, other, whyche rode forth wythout taryeng. And Charles wyth alle hys baronnye abode in a wode, as tofore I haue maad mencyon.

How by the moyen councyl of Rychard of Normandy, wyth iij other barons, the strong brydge of mantryble was wonne, not wythoute grete payne; And what maner man galafre was: capitulo vij

Themperour charles, with an hondred thousand men, abode in the wode tofore sayd, Rychard of normandy, hoel of Nautes, Ryoll, and Reyner, other peple wyche were valyaunte of theyr persone, were on the waye to goo toward mantryble, and ladde wyth them a quantyte of sommyers charged. whan the felowes of Rychard sawe the ryuer of flagot so roryng, And thentree of the cyte of mantryble so stronge, the brydge soo daungerous to passe, the yates barred and enchainyd so wyth yron, they were moche abashed. For, for to come thyder by assaulte, alle the puysaunce of crystendom myght not entre by that place, but they aualed the brydge and chaynes of yron. Ryol demaunded of Rychard: "What may there be of this place?" And he ansuerd: "knowe ye that thys is the strongest cyte that is bytwene thys and Acres. And there been in the same cyte moo than a thousand men of armes." Hoel of Nautes was alle afrayed, And commaunded hym self to god, prayeng hym to kepe theyr persones. Rychard sayd: "lordes, I wyl goo before, shal speke fyrst; and whan we haue passed the fyrst yate, see that ye take of your clokes for to smyte vpon the paynyms: for ony thyng that happeth, see that the one of you faylle not the other." Ryol ansuerd: "doubte ye not that whan I am emonge the sarasyns but that I sal doo my deuoyr that it shal appyere: and yf I doo not as I say, I wyl that ye reclame me recreaunte, and repute me as rebouted."(*Note: "reclame me recreaunte, &c.:" Fr. reclame recreant et tenu reboute.*) After these wordes they hasted theyr sommyers toward the brydge; galafre sawe them fro ferre, and stode restyng hym nygh to the fyrst gate, helde in his honde a grete axe of fyn stele bended and affyled that there was noo syde but it cutted. Thys paynym was grete, and fourmed so ydously, and of suche representacyon, that he semed better a deuyl than a resonable persone. he had eyen al enflammed lyke fyre, he was as blacke as boyled pytche; hys necke large grete, his nose half a fote longe, his eeres so grete that they myt conteyne wel half a busschel of whete, ys armes longe croked, his feet stode ouerthwart; as of the remenaunte of hys body, was lothely ynough. Ballant thadmyral loued ym moche, was his neuewe, and for the grete confydence that he had in hym he gaf to hym the keypyng of the brydge of mantryble, by cause that it was the moost strengest passage that was in al the marches of that contreye. And the sayd paynym was conestable of al the londes of thadmyral, wherfore it was necessarye that none of the frensshe men sold haue be knowen of hym. For yf there had ony be knowen, there shold neuer none haue escaped

How by the moyen councyl of Rychard of Normandy, wyth iij other barons, the strong brydge of mantryble was

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

but he shold haue ben dede. Thus, thenne, whan they were at mantryble, Rychard passed afore. and whan he was at the entre of the gate, Galafre came to hym sayd: "vassal, what are ye? wherfore come ye hyther?"

Rychard, whyche was wyse, chaunged his langage, began aragon, and sayd: "Syr, I am a marchaunte whyche cometh fro Taraston wyth these other marchauntes, brynge grete quantyte of draperye, and wyl goo to the fayres, by the helpe of mahon, to whome we goo to present our marchaundyses; and yf we were at Aygremore, we sold soiourne there, and gyue to thadmyral somme precyous yeftes that we here brynge. These other marchauntes that ben here wyth me ben al esclaues, and knowe not the langage, wherfor, fayre syr, we praye to aduyse vs what we may best do, by what waye we outg to goo." Galafre ansuerd: "knowe ye, that I am kepar of the brydge and of the passages that been fyfty myle here aboute. But not longe sythen passed hereby xij glotons of fraunce, whiche were messagers of the emperour Charles, which yet owe to me theyr trybute for theyr passage. Neuertheles my lord thadmeral kepeth them in pryson, And one of them that other day escaped preuily away as a theef, whiche rode vpon an hors the best that euer I sawe, passed ouer thys rennyng water; whyche also slewe my cosyn the kyng Claryon, for whome I am in grete melancolye. now wold god Mahon that he were now here vpon thys brydge, I sold cleue hym vnto the myddle of his bely wythout to haue ony mercy or pyte on hym.

Syth that tyme thadmyral doubteth of treason, For his sone fyerabras whyche hath renyed mahon and the paynym lawe for to become crysten. And he commaunded me thre tymes that I sold not suffre ony persone, lord, knyght, ne seruytour, to passe, And that I shold serche wel al for to knowe the condycyon of theym that come thys waye. Therfore I wyl knowe what ye be." Rychard heryng thys, bowed his hede:(*Note: "bowed his hede:" Fr. *baissa le menton.**) Ryol du mauns, Hoel of Nautes, and Reyner of genes goon forth ouer the brydge. whan galafre saw them, he began to doubte, and sayd to them that there sold nomoo entre, and auauced hym and drewe vp the brydge; and there were nomoo wythin but foure, whyche he dred not, and sayd to them in grete fyerste: "ye are ouer bolde hardy to entre herein wythout my commaundemente, And therfor ye four shal be sette in pryson, and the other that come after you also. And to—morn I shal sende you prysoners to my lord thadmyrall, he for to doo with you his playsyr. Take of your mantellys or clokes, for I wyl see what ye haue there vnder, For ye seme people for to do euyl." Thus sayeng, he toke noel by the cloke, drewe hym therby foure tymes aboute: "By god," sayd Ryol, "I may no lenger tarye to see hym do thys Iniurye to my cosyn; yf I suffre lenger, be I confounded!" And therwyth he threwe of his cloke, and smote vpon the paynym; but he was so strongly armed that he myght do hym no harme, sauf that he smote of a lytel of hys ere. Rychard and Reyner semblably caste of theyr clokes, and eche of them with a swerde in theyr hondes smote to—gydre vpon Galafre, and gaf hym many strokes; but the heed ne the body they myght not hurte, For he was armed with the hyde of on olde Serpente harde and maylled.(*Note: "of an olde Serpente, &c.:" Fr. *dung viel serpent crote et moult endurcy.**) Thys Paynym was angry, and supposed for to haue smyton Ryol, and enhauced hys axe that was grete and heuy and also sarpe. but Ryol sawe the stroke come, and was habylle, and lepte a syde, and the stroke smote vpon the grounde in suche wyse that hyt claffe a marble stone on whyche the stroke lyghted.

"Ha! god of heuen!" sayd Reyner, "how he smyteth oultrageously! I am al abasshed of the puyssaunce of thys deuyl whom we may not conquere ne gryeue." He thus sayeng, he took a grete braunche of a tree whyche was longe and stronge, and aduyed and marked the paynym wel, and he smote hym therwyth in suche wyse that he made hym to ouerthrowe to therthe; whan he was ouerthrowen, he maad a crye so hye and hydous that the Ryuer and the rockes made grete bruyt. Wyth thys voys the paynyms of mantryble were moeued and assembled, that within a lytel whyle there were redy armed moo than x thousand. there was thenne a grete commocyon; Rychard of Normandy ranne to the yate of the brydge, aualed down the drawe bridge, And thenne entred in v hondred knyghtes whych the foure barons had brought wyth them; but at the entre of the gate the paynyms encountred them: there was a grete medle and recountre; many mortal strokes were there gyuen, many were there slayne and hurte. Rychard took hys horne and sowned it hyely thre tymes. Charles themperour vnderstood it wel, whyche was in the wood aforesayd with al his puyssaunce. Euery man was on horsback moche redyly, and there was not one that cessed to renne tyl he came to the brydge. Ganellon, whyche after was traytour, bare hym valyauntly. For he was the fyrst that cam to the brydge wyth hys confanon(*Note: "confanon:" so in the original French.*) reysed; but the loyalte trouthe of hym ne of hys kynnesmen endured not longe, as the laste book sal more playnly shewe,

How by the moyen counceyl of Rychard of Normandy, wyth iij other barons, the strong brydge of mantryble was

by the playsyr of god.

How by force and' strengthe of bataylle Charles entred' in to mantryble, after that Galafre was slayn, not wythstondyng' that alory the traytre was contrarye to hym; and' many other maters: capitulo viij

At thentre of mantryble were moche hurt people confounded, as wel of frenssh men as of sarasyns. and at that tyme themperour bare hym wel, For whome he attayned wyth hys swerde named Ioyouse, he must nedes deye, he smote so rudely. and that day was alway by hym Ganellon, whych dyd wel hys deuoyr. The dyches of the towne were depe and ful of water, wherin many were drowned. Thus as Charles passed tofore, and hys people after, He sawe galafre on þ^e grounde, wich was not dede, and that semed better a deuyl than a resonable persone, And helde alwaye hys axe in hys honde, wyth whyche he had slayn thyrti frenssh men. And the Emperour, seeyng the harme that he had doon to the frensshe men, anone commaunded to sleepe hym; so moche they smote at hym wyth axes and stones, that they slewe hym. The bruyt and noyse was so grete, that fyue myle aboute was anone knowen that the brydge of mantryble was taken and conquerd; wherfore there came L thousand sarasyns, for to gyue ayde to the cytyzeyns of mantryble, and to destroye the frenssh men. The walles of the towne were of marble, and soo stronge that it semed a thyng Impossyble to conquere or destroye. To thys medle came a geaunt moche fyers, named Ampheon, And had a wyf named Amyotte. And she was departed fro her gesyne, (Note: "she was departed fro her gesyne, &c.:" Fr. *qui auoit faicte sa gessine de deux filz*, that is, who had given birth to two sons.) For se had borne two sones, whyche were but iiij monethes olde, and were two foot brode in the breste, and ten foot longe, as thystorye sayth. Thys geaunt opened the gate, helde in his honde a club of yron grete and massyf, And whan he was passed that yate, wyth hys voys tenebrouse and dyabolyke he cryed: "Where is charles the kyng of fraunce? wyl he now bere wyth hym the relyques to Saynt Denys? by mahon, by the whyche I comferte my self, it were better for hym, olde dotard, that he were now at parys. And late hym knowe certaynly, that yf thadmyral may haue hym, he sal neuer haue mercy on hym, but he shal do hym be flayn, hanged alle quycke, or brenne hym in a fyre." after that he had thus spoken, he smote doun many frensshe men wyth hys club of yron. In thys recountre were seen and founden so grete a multytude of dede men that they letted men to passe. Charles, whyche sawe the facyon, (Note: "facyon:" = state of affairs.) descended and lyght of hys hors, alle wroth in hys courage, sette hys selde tofore hym, wyth hys swerde in hys hande, and hys barons came after hym ayenst the geaunt. after that the kyng he were assembled, Charles wyth hys swerde Ioyous smote hym soo myghtely that he clefted hym in two pyeces, myghtely recouerd hys stroke, that he maad hym falle to the erthe, And soo he was deed. Wherfore the Sarasyns were all moeued and affrayed, And as people enraged smote vpon the Frensshe men with dartes, plombettes, and other engynes mortal.

And thenne Charles cryed socours for to assemble hys people. And wyth that crye came to hym Rychard of Normandy, Reyner of genes, hoel of nautes, and Syr Ryol du mauns, whyche alle had courage lyke vnto lyons. These foure barons wyth charles made the paynymys to remeue, and to reentre ageyn by force in to the towne of mantryble. And anone the turkes, whyche were moo than x thousand, cam to the yate for to sette it, in making grete defence with bowes and other sotte, besyde them that came after, whyche kepte the passages, which were wel, as thystorye maketh mencyon, fyue thousand; but alle they coude not fynde the maner to lyfte vp the brydge, For it was conserued and kept ayenst the sarasyns by the frenssh men. There was grete bruyt in thys recountre; And though Charles doubted, it was noo meruaylle. For he knewe wel that yf the sarasyns had lyfte vp the brydge to the yate of the towne, It had not be possyble to hym to haue passed ouer. And he, seeyng them reyse vp toward the yate grete barres of yron, supposed not to haue passed, And wyth a moche wooful herte began to wayle Roulland his neuewe, and the other hys felowes, as he shold neuer haue seen them.

Rychard of Normandy consydeyng thys, escryed and sayd: "Syr Emperour, in the honour of god esmaye you not, but thynke to destroye and smyte doun these Turkes, and god sal ayde helpe vs. Ye knowe wel that there is none so franke ne valyaunte that wyl acoward hymself, but that he ought to be despysed, and wyth good ryght. And I praye to god that he be confounded that suffreth hymself to be taken a-lyue for to dye afterward, and that

How by force and' strengthe of bataylle Charles entred' in to mantryble, after that Galafre was slayn, ~~not~~ wythstondyng'

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

had not leuer be hewen in pyeces than to retorne. And wythoute more, late vs auauce vs, For now it is nede that eche man proue hys strengthe and the valure of hys persone." Wyth these wordes of a grete courage, entred in to the towne, Charles, Reyner, Hoel, Ryol, and Rychard, These fyue onelye, eche wyth a swerde in hys honde. And ye ought to wete that they entred not wythout grete slaughter of turkes and of Paynymys.

Charles, seyng come grete multytude of sarasyns, cryed "a larme and socours" moche hye and furyously. Ganellon vnderstood hym, and had of hym grete pyte; Not wythstondyng at the laste he founde hym not good; came to geffroy, escryed hauteuyle his fader, the other hys kynnesmen, whyche were armed moche rychely to the nombre of M vij C, and al they came afote for to assayle the yate. The turkes maad grete deffence wyth brondes and barres of yron and mortal sotte, where as many were dede and hurte, of the people of the sayd Ganelon.

Thenne alory, the traytre, sayd to ganellon: "in fayth, we ben grete foles for to late vs thus deye, suffre thys torment." And after he sayd to ganellon yet: "late vs goo and departe. Charles is wythin wel empessed: god forbede that he euer departe! thou mayst wel see now, that of hym and of Reyner we are wel auenged of the contradycyons that they made to vs, of theyr subgettes also. And euyl deth mote he deye that foloweth them ony ferther. for we may wynne Fraunce at our ease and wylle, holde it wythout contradycyon, Seen that there is no baron that wyl be to vs contrarye." Ganellon ansuerd: "God of glorye forbede that euer I shold do suche trayson to my rytful lord! we holde of hym al our londes seygnouryes. I sold be holden for an ouer vntrewe man yf I consented to hys deth. We haue none other cause but that we ought to do our deuoyr for hym." whan Alory vnderstood hym, he enraged almoost for angre, and after sayd to ganellon: "ye be a veray fool, that ye tarye whan ye now may wel aduenge you. yf themperour Charles be slayn, al the other barons shal haue theyr heedes smyton of, And thus we sal be aduenged on al our enemyes. Therefore leue of, and come on." Ganellon ansuerd: "god forbede that euer I sold be a traytre to my lord, ne that I leue hym vnholpen, but doo my deuoyr to ayde hym. I had leuer to be dysmembred, than to be samed and blamed in this dede." Of these wordes were euyl contente Alory and also geffroy daulteuyle, in suche wyse that there was grete debate emonge them. Vpon this came Fyerabras in good araye and grete poynte, and began to crye: "where is Charles?"

The Traytre answerd: "Syr, ye shal neuer see hym. He is wythin enclosed, and I suppose he be dede now." Fyerabras answerd: "And ye emonge you, what doo you here? what tarye ye? why socoure ye hym not in thys nede? ye may be reproched of treson wyth good ryght." And after bygan to crye "socours and ayde" moche lowde; and by hys voys all the frensshe men came, wythoute ony taryeng, to the belfraye, and fonde Fyerabras and Ganellon, that thenne had lefte the Traytres at the entree of the brydge.

And Fyerabras thenne was wel Ioyous whan he sawe that the brydge was not drawn up, And thenne he and Ganellon dyd gretely theyr deuoyr, for to entre in to the cyte. And whan they were wythin, the traytres sawe the toun wonne, by a manere to do gretely theyr deuoyr, entred in a foot, smote doun wyth the other comunelye. And grete habundaunce of blode runne thurgh the towne oute of the dede bodyes, that eche man meruaylled that sawe it. The paynymys cryed and brayed as wulues enfamysshed, whan they sawe that they coude not resyste them. They sente to the admyral that he shold socoure them, and cryed on mahon Termagaunt that they wold come to theyr ayde; but for all that, they were dyscomforted sorowfully, put oute of theyr habytacyons, robbed, pyllid of theyr rychesses and goodes, and destroyed. Thus doyng,(*Note: "Thus doyng:" = while this was happening.*) a messenger departed secretlye for to goo to Aygremore, for tacompte and telle the tydynges of theyr destructyons.

How Amyotte, a geantesse, wyth a sythe greued' gretely the crysten men, and' how hyr two sones were baptysed of the Emperour Charles: capitulo ix

Whan mantryble was taken, many strokes were gyuen; but when Amyotte,(*Note: "Amyotte." Amyote, Sir Ferumbras, 4663; Barrok, in the Sowdone, 2939.*) the geantesse, knewe herd the crye of the cytezeyns, whiche were troubled, She was as blacke as pytche boylled: hyr eyen were rede as brennyng fyre: se had a grete vysage

How Amyotte, a geantesse, wyth a sythe greued' gretely the crysten men, and' how hyr two sones were baptysed

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

croked, as hye of lengthe as a spere, gretely affrayed of the deth of hyr husbond, also aferde for hyr ij sones, of whyche se was late delyuerd; soo se in a rage lepte out of hyr hous, and fonde a sythe trenchaunt and meruayllously sharpe, and cam vpon the frensshe men so Impetuously that se maad grete dyscomfyte, in suche wyse that none durst wel approche yr. Kyng Charles seeyng thys, was euyl contente of the deth of hys peple, and demaunded a crosse bowe. And whan it was bende, he sotte so ryght that he atteyned hyr bytwene the browes, so that se fyl doun deed to the erthe. She began to cast oute of hyr throte a flamme of fyre, moche hydous. Neuertheles, se was smyton so wyth stones and other thynges, that she neuer moeued after; wherfore after that, the yates of the towne and other deffences were not kepte ne defended, but that Charles dyd his wylle of alle. Grete rychesse was founde in that fayre towne, and the subgettes of the Emperour Charles were there wel refressed of gold and syluer, whiche there habounded. For thadmyral Ballant, by cause that place was so stronge sure, had layed there grete tresours. The kyng ordeyned in suche manere, that bothe grete and smale were wel contente wyth hym. And there he abode thre dayes in departyng(*Note: orig. dapartyng.*) destrubytyng the goodes, after the degrees qualytees of hys subgettes. And after, as charles wente sportyng by the ryuer flagot, In a caue were founden the ij sones, yonge chyldren, of the fornamed geantesse Amyotte, of whome he was wel Ioyous, and were baptyssed; one he named Roulland, and that other Olyuer; and dyd do them wel to be nourysshed. But after, wythin two monethes, they were bothe founden dede in theyr beddes, wherfore themperour was euyl contente. Neuertheles, in that same tyme, whyche was the moneth of may, that the stronge cyte of mantryble was taken put in subgectyon, charles made to come to hym Rychard of Normandy, Reyner of genes, hoel of nautes, Ryol of mauns, took counceyl who sold kepe the brydge and passage of mantryble, tyl they had destroyed ballant the admyral, delyuerd oute of pryson the other peres of fraunse. Rychard(*Note: In the Sowdone, 3043, Richard is left as governor of Mantrible.*) answerd: "syr emperour, me semeth it shold be good that hoel syr Ryol sold abyde for to kepe þ^e brydge toun wyth fyue thousand men." and lyke as Rychard sayd, so was it doon. and there they ij abode, and the hurt men for to be heled at theyr leyzer. and after, with sowne of trompettes, the hoost of the emperour began to depart toward aygremore; and there was so moche peple and so grete estate, that it was merueylle. Thus as they were wel on theyr waye, The Emperour wente vpon a lytel hylle for to byholde his peple and subgettes; And seeyng the multytude, he lyfte vp hys eyen to heuen, and sayd: "O lord god, my creatour, whiche by thy grace and playsyr hast made me lord and conduytour of thys people, wyth ryght good hert I gyue to the, thankynges and laude. Thou hast gyuen to me grete puysaunce sythe they be at my wylle and commaundemente." After that he had sayd thus, he blessyd hym, And in the name of Ihesus he took forth ys waye. And the sayd Emperour had in hys companye an hondred thousand men wel fyghtyng. And the Admyral had the fyghtars of thyrtene contreyes. the frenssh men rode forth: Rychard of normandye was in the auunte garde, And the Duke Reyner(*Note: orig. Reyuer.*) in that other. Anone the tydynges came to thadmyral that galafre was slayn, that mantryble was taken dyscomfyted, wherfore he swowned for sorowe,(*Note: "he swowned, &c.:" Fr. il pasma de dueil et cria comme tout hors du sens.*) and cryed out, "haroo!" as a man fro hym self, sayeng: "ha! ha! god mahon! thy power is nought. O cursyd god recreaunte, thou art nothyng worth to me! he is a moche fool that trusteth in the, whan thou suffrest my men to be slayn, and hast consented to my dysonour, as I now wel see, whych outest wel to haue doon the contrarye." Thys sayeng, the admyral took a clubbe with his two handes, ranne to mahon his other goddes, smote Mahon soo grete a stroke vpon the heed, that he fyl doun, was al to-broken. yf thadmyral and the other paynims were not wel abused,(*Note: "wel abused:" Fr. bien abusez = greatly deceived or mistaken. This is almost the oldest use of the word. "Abuser. To abuse, misuse ... deceive, disappoint, gull, cozen, beguile. S'abuser. To mistake, to be in error; to wronge himselfe, &c."* Cotgrave.) they myght knowe clerely theyr Infydelyte and fals creaunce, for to Inuoke the ymages that can not speke ne gyue comfort, and haue no consolacion. A lytel vnderstondyng and lacke of wytte, also contrarye to nature, for to gyue fayth of helpe to a thyng made with the hande of a man. Neuertheles, Sortybrant of Conymbres, seeyng the desolacyon of thadmyral, counceyllled hym, that as moche as he myght, to chastyse hym self of the Iniurye doon to Mahon. Thadmyral said to hym: "I may not encline to do to hym obeysaunce, Seeyng that Charles hath wonne by his puysaunce my cyte and stronge tour of mantryble, where as I had my laste comferte to kepe me moost sure." Sortybrant ansuerd: "Syr admyral, sende forth an espye for to wete yf the hoost of charles cometh hyther ageynst you; And yf it be soo, late vs ryde ayenst hym in bataylle to-gyder. And yf ye may, late hym be taken, and hange hys people, or brenne them, without ony mercy or pyte. And thenne after ye may caste out of your tour these glotons that kepe it, and smyte of the heed of Fyerabras, thy sone, that aydeth them." Whan the

How Amyotte, a geantesse, wyth a sythe greued' gretely the crysten men, and' how hyr two sones were baptyssed

admyral ballant had herde Sortybrant, consyderyng hys affectyon, humbly he returned to mahon, purposyng to do as he had sayd.

How the peres of Fraunce were assaylled' more strongly than euer they were, And' the toure quasi put to therthe, and' recomforted' by the holy relyques, by them adoured, and other maters: capitulo x

Sortybrant prayed soo moche thadmyral, with hym the olde kyng Coldroe tempested hym, (*Note: "the olde kyng Coldroe tempested hym."* Here Caxton has made a most curious mistake. The original runs: *et auec luy le viel roy Coldroe, tempeste, et brullant de mommiere: tempeste* being really the name of one of the Saracen kings, and not a verb.) *brullant de mommyere*, that for thyniurye that he had doon to Mahon tofore them al he sold make amendes. The admyral beyng content for their affectyon, sware that he shold encrease Mahon, and Augment of a thousand weyt, after their custome, of fyn gold and other precyosytes. And anone dyd do sowne trompettes and other Instrumentes, at the sowne of whome were assembled sarasyns Innumerable, al armed. And the admyral maad to brynge hys engynes for to throwe grete stones at the tour, for to brynge it doun, and also for to destroye the frensshe men hys doughter. And thus, more feruent than euer he had been, cam for tassayle the toure, and laye theyr engynes therto; wyth whych the paynmys made fyue grete hooles in the toure, that thurgh the leste myght passe a carte at his ease. whan thys was doon, Olyuer Rolland, wyth theyr selde tofore them, and theyr swerdes in theyr hondes, stode in the wyndowes, and yet they were not soo hardy emonge them but that they were abashed, not wythstandyng they had good wylle to defende them. Alway hym that they myght attayne with stones or other thynges, they soo hurte hym that he dyd them nomore hurt ne damage. This doyng, thadmyral cryed: "O my frendes and subgettes, doo your deuoyr to brynge to the erth thys toure; For yf ye so do, ye shal haue my loue entyerly. And after I shal make Florypes the putayne to deye samefully in a brennyng fyre, for se hath wel deserued it, doyng to me the dysonour that euery man knoweth." After these wordes the paynmys were more feruent than they had ben tofore, surmounted by strengthe, scaled the toure, and mounted vp, and entred in at holes, in suche wyse that the x barons helde not but þe last stage that was. Rolland seyng thys, sayd to them: "lordes brethern! in thonour of god our maker, late vs wyth one courage bere vs valyauntly, ellys we shal not passe thys day, but that we sal be surprysed, taken, and deffeated." "Brother felowe," sayd Olyuer, "we been here of vs x, as longe as it sal please our creatour, we been al good fyghtars. In the name of God, I counceyl that we yssue oute for to assayle our enemyes. I had leuer to dye there withoute, and suffre to be hewen, than to deye here wythin wyth dysonour." Ogyer the danoys, and the other, sayd semblably. Florypes, seeyng thys, was al abashed, and demaunded the barons yf they wold goo out for to goo assaylle the paynmys, sayd to them: "ye noble knyghtes of honour of good partye, I praye to god that at this tyme yeue you grace to doo wel, And I promyse you yf ye put them oute from thys assaulte, I shal sewe to you a thyng wherof ye sal be Ioyeful." wyth tho wordes (*Note: orig. thordes.*) the barons goo smyte and hewe doun the turkes so vygorously, that many of them were dede hurt whych were in the holes of the walle, smote them wyth stoones in the tour, in suche wyse that they were caste in to the dyches and drowned. And anone as they had gotten thoo holes, they stopped them faste enclosed them. and after florypes axed fyrst of naymes duc of bauyere, of Thyerry duc of Ardayne, and sayd: "Lordes, on a tyme ye promysed me, and sware, that ye shold not do ony thyng ayenst my wylle. I wyl sewe to you the crowne of Ihesus, two of the nayles that he was nayled with to the crosse, whyche I haue long kept." The barons heryng thys, wepte for Ioye, sworn to hyr that they sold do no thyng to hyr, but al loyalte and trouthe. Florypes wente thenne and fette a lytel coffre, moche ryche fayre, and tofore them she opened it; assone as the relyques were taken vnwounden, there was seen a grete clerenes and a meruayllous resplendysshour.

Thenne the barons kneled doun to the erthe, deuoutely smytyng them self on their brestes by contrycyon of hert. Duc Naymes of bauyere was the fyrst that kyssed them wyth grete reuerence, the other after, after came to the wyndowes, For the paynmys were mounted on hye. And assone as they sawe them, they tumbled doun to þ^e grounde, dede, al to-broken. Whan Naymes sawe that, he sayd: "O lord god of glorye, whyche mayst do al thyng, I thanke the, gyue to the lawde praysyng, For now I see wel and knowe that these ben the relyques of whome we haue ofte spoken." And Incontynent he took hardynes and courage, and after sayd to hys felawes:

How the peres of Fraunce were assaylled' more strongly than euer they were, And' the toure quasi put to therthe **76** to ther

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

"Brethern, now we be recomforted, so that we shal neuer fere ne doubtte paynyns ne sarasyns." And after, Florypes remysed the relyques in the coffret honestly. Thadmyral sawe the prynces at the wyndowes, hys doughter wyth them; he, ful of a fals entencyon, escryed hyr wyth an hye voys, by cause he wold be vnderstonden: "O florypes, fayr doughter, I see wel where thou art. A grete fool was thy fader whan he trusted the, ful of folysshe counceyl was he that put in thyn hande, by the moyen of thy langage, the fyrst prysoners. I haue herde say longe sythe, that a man that trusteth in a woman, of thyng of Importaunce, is a moche fool. but neuertheles thy puterye shal not endure longe, as I truste, For I swere to the that I shal departe the loue that thou hast wyth the glotons of Fraunce, wythoute pyte I shal doo brenne you al." Florypes herde these wordes, took a baston in her honde, made a sygne as though se had menaced yr fader; wherfore thadmyral, seeyng that, began to sowne to gadre hys peple, and comaunded to sote lose the Instrumentes ayenst the toure, in suche wyse that anone a grete partye of the walle was ouerthrowen to therthe. Thenne the barons doubted moche of them vpon the walle. And Rolland, Olyuer, and Ogyer went in to a chambre, where as were Mahon, Appolyn, Termagaunte, Margotte, goddesses of the Paynyns, whyche were moche ryche. And Rolland took Appolyn whyche was heuy, and threwe it vpon the Paynyns: Olyuer lyfte vp termagaunte, Ogyer Margotte, and smote wyth them the sarasyns, in suche wyse that them that they attayned dyd them neuer hurte after.

Whan thadmyral sawe thus his goddesses vytupered and throwen, he took suche angre and so grete yre in hys courage, that for sorowe he tumbled down as a dede man to the erthe. Sortybrant, with moche sorowe, took hym vp, and many wepte made grete desolacyon for sorowe. and after thadmyral sayd: "lordes frendes, he shal euer be my frende specyally byloured, þat wyl aduenge the same that these glotons haue doon to my goddesses." Sortybrant dyd grete payne to recomforte ym, sayeng that in sort tyme he sold be auenged on them al, "seen that the toure is broken in moo than xv partyes." "O Mahon," sayd the admyral, "thou hast wel forgotten me; at the moost nede thou fayllest me: thou arte now so olde that thou dotest. I haue seen the day that þou haddest grete puyssaunce." Sortybrant ansuerd: "Syr, ye haue an euyl custome, whan ye speke so euyl ayenst Mahon. Ye knowe wel that there was neuer borne, ne neuer shal be, so good a god: he gyueth vs plente (*Note: orig. pleute.*) of whete, of wyn, and of other goodes also; he sal doo for vs whan he hath bythought hym. he is yet euyl contente for the stroke that ye smote hym on the nose. Abyde a lytel tyl he be better aduysed, (*Note: "better aduysed:" Fr. *quil soit desensle* (?).*) And the frensshe men shal yelde them vnto you soo that ye sal holde you pleased." Vpon these wordes Mahon was broughte tofore hym, And a deuyl entred in to hym, whyche sayd in thys manere after that he had adoured hym: "Admyral, ryche lord, ne dyscomfort you not: do sowne your trompettes hornes, and assemble your peple, after assaylle the toure; and at thys tyme ye shal take the Frensshe men." wyth these wordes thadmyral was al reioyced, and alle thengynes and Instrumentes he dyd do sette ayenst the tour, and threwe stones and maad grete sotte ageynst the toure, whyche was thenne al to-broken, and almoost al ouerthrowen. The peres of Fraunce seyng thys, had grete doubtte of daunger, and not wythout cause. Neuertheles, Ogyer the danoys sayd to hys felawes: "O loyal companyons, replenysshed of fydelyte, For ony payne or doubtte of deth emonge vs, late none be founde wyth ony treason, ne suffre to entre in to hym ony euyl thought of Infydelyte and cowardyse. ye see now þat the tour gooth to grounde, And almoost these sarasyns be medled wyth vs. But as touchyng to me, I swere by god my maker, that tofore my soule sal departe fro my body, yf I haue the puyssaunce to holde in my hande Cortayn my swerde, I shal make so grete a dyscomfyture of these paynyns, that euery man sal meruaylle." With these wordes Rolland byhelde durandal; and Olyuer, with eueryche of the other, byhelde (*Note: "byhelde:" Fr. *regarderent*. See note to p. 102, l. 6.*) theyr swerdes, were alle renewed wyth strengthe and courage. And al wyth one wylle goon vpon the sarasyns, and there dyd suche dylygence, that allewaye they were lordes of the toure, made the sarasyns theyr enemyes to goo abacke. Florypes, consyderyng theyr affayre, was sorowful that no socours com to hem, and also remembryng the menaces of hyr fader hadmyrall. But Guye of bourgoyne recomforted hyr alwaye, in suche wyse, that of al se was contente.

How the peres of Fraunce had' tydynges of (*Note: orig. yf.*) thoost of charles, and' the admyral also; and' how Ganellon bare hym merueyllously, which allone was sente to the admyral, and' what he dyd': capitulo xi

How the peres of Fraunce had' tydynges of (*Note: orig. yf.*) thoost of charles, and' the admyral also; and' how

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

The Frensshe men beyng in thys contynuel payn of bataylle for to defende þ^e toure, Duc Naymes(*Note: "Duc Naymes." In the Sowdone Floripas first sees the French army advancing.*) of bauyere went vp on hye, and sawe oute of a wyndowe, sawe byneth in a valeye the sygne of saynt denys, whyche was brought hastely, after, a grete companye of men of armes: And thought in hym self that they came for to socour and ayde them. and anone sent for hys felawes for to come see them. Assone as Florypes vnderstood it, se came to Guy of bourgoyn, sayeng: "O glorious vyrgyn marie, moder of Ihesus, worsypped mote ye be for these tydynges that I haue herde! O noble knyght, guye of bourgoyn, my dere loue, approche ye to me yf it playse you, and kysse me." Of the Ioye of Florypes, were Ioyeful the erles and lordes, ye may thynke that they were wel comforted whan they sawe the standard of fraunce, wherin was the dragon wel figured. Grete Ioye and grete consolacion was emonge them, they had cause, seen the daunger wherin they were. Anone a paynym cam to thadmyral, sayd to hym, that Charles wyth an hondred thousand men of armes came making grete bruyt. The kyng Coldroe counceyllled anone that euery man sold be armed, and that they sold goo mete wyth ym at the fyrst poynte. Hys counceyl was approued by thadmyral and by thother. Wherfore anone L thousand turkes were assembled in grete poynte for to kepe the grete vale of Iosue, to thende that he myght not come in to Aygremore. Rolland sawe Rychard of Normandy wyth hys confanon reysed vp, whyche came al afore: and alle taryed in a medowe for to bayte and refresshe theyr horses, and to tarye there al the nyght, whyche was nyghe. And wythoute making lodgyses or other thyng, they there rested them al nyght, For theyr tentes were lefte at mantryble. On the morne erly, the Emperour dyd do arme his peple, sette them in good araye, and in grete poynte, And after sente for Fyerabras, and sayd to hym: "Ryght dere frende, thou knowest that I haue doo the be baptysed, wherfore I loue the the better. yf thou mytest pourchace and make that thy fadre be baptysed, and renye Mahon and al hys dyabolike goddes, I shold be wel glad and Ioyous. And I promyse to the, that of al hys goodes I shal not take a peny. And yf he wyl not so do, I promyse that by force I sal fygt ayenst hym; yf he take harme, wyte it not me, ne conne me noo maulgre, for I may not lette it." "Syr Emperour," sayd Fyerabras, "take a messenger, and late hym demaunde hym, yf he wyl soo doo as ye say, and I shal be content. For yf he gaynsaye it I sal neuer praye for hym, ne haue pyte of hym, though I see hym hewen and deye." Hereupon charles demaunded Reyner and rychard of Normandy, whyche were his nexte counceyllours, and sayd to them: "Lordes, whome seme you moost propyce for to sende on thys message to the Admyrall? By myn aduys, ganellon sold be good therfore, yf he wold, for to recounte speke hooly thys message. I knowe hym for wel suffysaunt, ye knowe wel that he dyd wel hys deuoyr at the entre of mantryble. yf ye wyl consente, he shal doo the message." Rychard answerd, and Reyner also, that he sold doo wel the message. The kyng sente for ganellon, and sayd to hym: "My frende, we haue chosen you for to goo say to thadmyral Ballant that he be baptysed renye mahon, that he take Ihesu Cryste for hys god, that he byleue in hym, in hys passyon that he suffred for al umayn creatures; after, that he yelde to me my barons, whyche he holdeth in hys pryson, also the relyques that longe tyme I haue demaunded of hym. yf he wyl do this, we shal leue to hym hys contreye hys landes: yf he wyl doo otherwise, we sal make to hym mortal warre, and sal take of hym no mercy." Ganellon was contente for to goo thyder allone, And took sette on his helme, mounted vpon is hors, named gascon, and henge on hys necke his selde, wherein was paynted the lyon, after went in to the vale of Iosue hastely. and anone he was taken of the turkes that kept the passage; but whan they knewe that he was a messenger for to speke to thadmyral, they troubled hym not, but lete hym goo, he taryed not tyl that he came tofore thabytacyon of thadmyral, he lente vpon his spere with a knyghtly countenance, moche resembled a baron of grete valure, for to say wel hys message. whan thadmyral knewe of his comyng, he came to hym, And thenne Ganellon spake hardyly to hym in this manere: "Sarasyn, take hede vnderstonde me: I am a messenger of the noble charles, kyng of fraunce ryght myghty Emperour, he sendeth the worde by me, that thou renye and forsake Mahon thyn other goddes dyabolyke, byleue in Ihesu cryst, the redemptour of al the worlde, whyche took on hym humanityte, and suffred deth, cruel bytter, in the tree of the(*Note: orig. ithe.*) crosse,(*Note: "in the tree of the crosse:" Fr. en larbre.*) for to redeme al the world. yf thou so do, thou art assured not onely not to deye, also not to lese thy londe, ne none of thy good, but thou salt alwaye be byloued of ym, of Fyerabras thy sone. and yf thou wylt not accorde herto, withstande it, knowe for certayn, that of Charles thou art deffyed, al thy people. yf thou wylt saue thy self, thynke to flee and wythdrawe the fro thys contreye; For yf thou may be taken and holden, thou shalt be delyuerd to daungerous deth, and alle thy subgettes shal be dysmembred slayn, after, he sal gyue thy royame and thy rychesses to his seruantes. Therfore aduyse the wel." Whan thadmyral had herde hym, he was almoost in a rage of hys wordes,(*Note: "he was almoost in a rage of hys wordes:" Fr. a peu de fait quil ne fut enraige de ses*

How the peres of Fraunce had' tydynges of(*Note: orig. yf.*) thoost of charles, and' the admyral also; a76' how G

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

parolles.) and by destresse of angre he took a staffe for to smyte the messenger, and sayd to hym: "Gloton payllard! thou art dysmesured in thy langage. by mahon, to whome I am yeuen, at thys tyme thou hast be ouer hardy, lytel loued the, Charles, whan he sente the to me. For thou salt be wel sure that thou salt neuer recouente to hym thy message." Ganellon, seyng that he was not wel sure wyth them, he took hys swerde, whyche was heuy sarpe, gaf wythal a stroke to brullant of mommyere in the breste, that he ouerthrewe fyl at the feet of the admyrall, whyche seyng that, escryed moche strongely tauenge hym. Thenne wyth thys voys assembled moo than fyfty thousand turkes, for to take Ganellon, whyche ranne after hym thurgh the vale of Iosue; but he escaped them al, and was not taken. Duc Naymes was at a wyndowe, and sawe hym chaced, demaunded Rolland Olyuer what he was; they knewe for certayn that he was crysten, and by presumyng(*Note*: "by presumyng:" Fr. *par presumacion* = by supposition.) made emonge them they Iudged that it was Ganellon that had spoken to thadmyral. "Alas!" sayd Rolland, "I praye to Ihesus our redemour that he graunte hym grace to passe wel without daunger. I sal be euyl content yf he come not to his good desyre." The other barons sayden semblably, prayed god to kepe ym fro peryl. Ganellon ran alwaye forth tyl he came to the toppe of a montayne, and there he torned hym ayenst the Paynmys, sawe comyng to hym a grete paynym of the cyte of Aygremore. and anone he took hys swerde named murgall, moche trenchaunte, atteyned the paynym vpon the helme, and clefte hym to the breste: And after, he slewe Tenebre, whyche was broder of kyng Sortybrant. Olyuer sawe al hys feat, and sayd to Rolland: "Brother, beholde the valyaunce that thys baron dooth; I praye god that he conserue hym. And wete ye wel that in my hert I loue hym. Saue you charles, I loue none better. Now wold god that I were in ys companye, I shold make grete marterdom on these Paynmys." Neuertheles he was strongely chaced of the paynmys. But whan they sawe the hoost of Charles, they retorned aback, and wente tolde the affayre to thadmyral, how Charles had moo than an hondred thousand fyghtyng men. wherfore they counceyllled that euery man sold arme hym, that counceyl was approued. but whan sortybrant knewe that hys broder was dede, he made to come an Innumerable companye of sarasyns, tauenge his deth in menacyng to do harm to Charles. Of hys entencyon was moche glad thadmyral, bycause he myght the better come to hys desyre.

How Charles emperour ordeyned' ten bataylles, and how they dyd' were recountred' of the puysaunce of the admyral, where as themperour dyd' meruaylles, and' of other maters: capitulo xij

Whan Ganellon was comen to kyng Charles, themperour ordeyned x bataylles after that Ganellon had tolde hys message, whyche was suche: "Syr emperour, I say to you that thadmyral ne fereth you ne your dedes, neyther god ne hys sayntes. I was wel happy that I escaped, For I haue been chaced wyth xx thousand sarasyns. after that thadmyral wold haue had me, after these wordes, I slewe one of theyr kynges." wherfore he was prayed of the kyng other. And anone they sowned hornes and trompettes, was open warre on alle partes in thoost of Charles. Rolland herde the sowne, and the voys of the frensshe hoost, wherof he and al the barons were al reioyced made good chyere. whan the ij hoostes recountred, al the contrey sone of theyr armes, ther were so many of them. after, as I haue sayd tofore, kyng charles made ten bataylles: In the fyrst, he ordeyned Rychard of Normandy; Duc Reyner of genes had the second, Ganellon the thyrd, Alory the fourth, Geffroy the fyfthe, Machayre the vj, Hardre the seuenth, Amangius the viij, Sampson the ix, And of the tenthe was conduytour charles the kyng. in eche bataylle were x thousand men of armes wel fyghtyng atte leste. Whan Ballant the admyral sawe the kyng comyng, he sayd to brullant, "who sal be the fyrst that sal entre in to bataylle with an hondred thousand paynmys;" sayd that yf he took Charles, he sold not slee them ne fyerabras, for he wold after smyte of theyr heedes. vpon thys poynte the warre was open, Brullant began to goo a grete bowedraut tofore the other, and began to crye "haro! haro! where is charles themperour wyth is euyl chere? loo! I come to the! thou hast enterprysed a grete folye whan thou passest the see, ouer late thou salt repente the. On thys day sal be the ende of thy lyf and of thy subgettes lyf. And wythoute faulte(*Note*: "wythoute faulte:" Fr. *sans faulte* = without fail.) thou salte be yolden to thadmyral, alle thy contreye shal be destroyed." Themperour herde wel these wordes; wherfore alle in a furye he lete renne hys hors, came ageynst the paynym, attayned hym in suche wyse that hys harnoys brake, and after, he drewe hys swerde, and neuer lefte hym tyl he was dede. fro thens with is spere he came to a turke kyng of pyetrelee, and smote hym in the breste that he fyl deed to the erthe. and whan his spere was broken, he dyd grete

How Charles emperour ordeyned' ten bataylles, and how they dyd' were recountred' of the puysaun~~ce~~^{ce} of the a

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

deuoyr with Ioyouse hys swerd; for hym that he attayned, dyd neuer hurte after. At that tyme he bare hym meruayllously, that one of the hoostes medled eche wyth other in suche wyse that there was neuer seen warre so mortal, for they that were luyng were lette by them that were dede. Thenne emonge the paynmys there was a turke, named Tenebres, which cam making grete bruyt vpon the frensse men, and attayned fyrst the noble Iehan of pountayse vpon his shelde, and brake it in pyeces, smote hym thurgh the body that he fyl deed to the erthe; and after drewe hys swerde, put to deth huon, and guernyer thauncyen, and after sayd to the frensse men that on that day Charles and hys subgettes had loste theyr myght. Rychard of Normandy had despyte of hys wordes, came ageynste hym, attayned hym so daungerously that he brake his hawberke, and brake his selde in quarters, so smote hym, that he fyl doun deed wythout ony more reprochyng sayeng euyl wordes. after, by force of strengthe they passed the vale of Iosue, came and fonde thadmyral wyth alle hys puyssaunce, whyche was accompanied wyth iiii kynges crowned, wyth an CM fyghtyng men, as wel a horsback as a fote. Anone a messenger came to the admyral, tolde hym how brullant his brother was dede, and many in hys companye. Thenne he sente for tempest, hys neuewe, for Sortybrant of conymbres, his moost specyal frendes, said to them: "My barons and trewe frendes, yf euer ye haue loued me, haue entencion to do me playsyr, Doo so moche that ye fynde charles the kyng. For I wyl goo to hym, and haue concluded in my self to fyght in my persone ayenst hys persone; sythe I shal deye ones, it suffyseth me that I myght slee hym, thenne sal I be contente to deye, yf I deye after. For I retche not yf I aduenge me or I deye." Sortybrant many other, consyderyng thastate of thadmyral, bygonnen to wepe for pyte in comfortyng hym.

How in thys bataylle folowyng', Sortybrant was slayne by Reyner, fader of Olyuer, and after how thadmyral dyd' meruaylles and' grete ennoye to the frensse men: capitulo xiiij

Ballant thadmyral rode vpon an hors, the beste rennyng of alle the contreye, ryght wel armed, and it was blacke as a more, hym self was grete of body, well membred, had hys berde hangyng to the sadel, whyche was whyte as snowe. after dyd do sowne hys trompettes hornes tasseble his hoost, made the archers to goo byfore, whyche coude wel sote wyth bowes turquoyes, al furyously that one ayenst the other goo sote, and make mortal warre, so that the sotte flewe in thayer thycker than hayl. So moche people was there slayn that the wayes were empessed lette by dede bodyes. The Duke Reyner passed thurgh forth, the fyrst that he encountred was kyng Sortybrant, gaf to hym a grete stroke without faynyng, that ys selde auaylled hym not; hys hauberk al to-brake, so that he made his spere to plonge and bayne in hys body soo depe, that he abode there deed lyke a beest; after, wyth hys swerde made so grete murdre slaughter of the fals turkes, þat it was meruaylle. Anone the admyral knewe the deth of Sortybrant, wherof he was almoost oute of hys wytte in a rage, and sythe sayd: "O Sortybrant, my special frende, I see wel now that I shal be auenged yf I venge not thy deth." with thyse wordes he maad is hors to renne vpon þ^e frens men so despytously that whome he attayned he put to deth, and came to huon of myllan, slewe hym. thenne he dyd grete dommage, and fought that tyme so strongly, that he put to deth wel seuen frensse men xiiij Normans moche valyantly, sayeng: "O ye vnhappy frensse men, I shal now make you knowe that thadmyral of spayne is comen. in this day shal thoost of fraunce be destroyed, sal neuer repayre home ageyn in to fraunce. I shal lede away with me the kyng Charles with his florissched berd, I sal do hange or brenne hym, also with hym, Rolland Olyuer, their felowes." with these wordes the paynems enhardyed them in suche wyse þat they dyd gretely theyr deuoyr ayenst the frensse men. At this medle the counte ganellon, haldre, alory, geffroy daulteuyle, þat lygnage, dyd gretely theyr deuoyr and bare them wel. For in a sorte space by them were slayn moo than a M paynmys. Thadmyral, moost valyaunt of the sarasyns, attayned the counte myllon by hys helme, that almoost he had abyden in the place, and with a stroke thadmyral smote of hys hors hede that he fyl to the erthe. and after he took hym, layed hym tofore hym, for to haue born hym awaye, but the lygnage of ganellon saued hym, notwythstondyng that many of theym were slayn and dede. Neuertheles the frensse men surmounted the paynmys, and that was by the ayde of fyerabras, which for loue of Charles dyd fyght, and made grete dyscomfyture of the sarasyns. for there he put to deth Tempeste, and the olde Rubyon, and moo than fyfty other of these mastyns myscreauntes. he there bare hym in suche wyse that there was not one persone that durst come tofore hym to resyste hym.

How in thys bataylle folowyng', Sortybrant was slayne by Reyner, fader of Olyuer, and after how thadmyral dyd

How the peres of Fraunce whyche were in the toure came oute whan they sawe the hoost, how thadmyral was taken holden prysonner: capitulo xiiij

The paynymys frensshe men, alwaye perseueryng in mortal bataylle, coude not make thende, eche one of other, For the multytude of the paynymys was so grete that they myt not be dyscomfyted. Whan the barons that were in the tour sawe the fayt, that they that kepte the toure were goon to the socours and crye of thadmyral, they sprange out, eche took an hors of them þat were dede, which ranne at al aduenture; and eche also took his swerde in is hond, sodeynly cam vpon the sarasyns for to passe thurgh them to the frensshe hoost, made so grete bruyt that the moost hardyest of the paynymys gaf them waye, lete them passe, and in especyal rolland, for where he smote with durandal, cam neuer after tofore ym. at thys departyng was derly recomanded guy of bourgoyne of florypes, for she had fere of hym. Neuertheles, whan they were assembled wyth the other, wythoute letyng them to be knowen, went vpon the sarasyns, helde them soo sort that anone they slewe them in suche wyse þat the other put them to flyght(*Note: "helde them soo short, &c.:" Fr. et les tindrent si de prez quelz ne sceurent que faire.*): for there was neuer larke fledde more ferfully tofore þ^e sperhawke than the sarasyns fledde tofore rolland. Thadmyral knewe wel hys destructyon by the comyng of the peres that were in þ^e toure, cryed wyth an hye voys: "mahon, my god, to whome I haue gyuen my self, and haue doon to so moche honour, thou hast forgotten(*Note: orig. forygoten.*) me! Remembre me now! For and euer I may gete the, I sal bete the bothe flankes, hede vysage, and also put out thyn eyen, fals recreaunt god that thou art." he thus sayeng, he was so pursyewed and smyton that he fyl down vnder his hors, and was taken, and not slayn, at the request of hys sone fyerabras, to thende that he sold be aduysed to byleue in Ihesu cryst, in the holy Trynyte, bycome crysten, al his contreye. Thenne the bataylle took an ende; and he that wold not be conuerted was incontynent put to deth. Somme fledde, and somme were taken. Thenne after thys the Frensshe men wente vnarmed them, Charles sawe there hys barons whom he desyred so moche to see, in especial his neuwe rolland, Olyuer, whom he loued so moche, were so gretly valyaunt. It can not be sayd ne expressed the Ioye that was emonge them; the consolacyon reioycyng of kyng charles was Inestymable. Thenne they recounted alle thynges what were happend to them, of theyr daungers and Ieopardyes whiche they had escaped, sorowes lamentacions that they had endured, wherfore Charles and many other wept for pyte. And thys endured many dayes, there where as the hurt men seek were heeled, they that were hole passed theyr tyme in deduyte, tryumphe, and Ioye.

How ballant, thadmyrall, for ony admonycyon that was shewed' to hym, wold not be baptysed, and how after, guy of bourgoyne espoused florypes, was crowned kyng, and she quene of that contreye: capitulo xv

Whan charles had al appeased, he took ballant the admyral tofore hys noblesse, sayd to hym in this maner: "ballant, al creatures resonable owen to gyue synguler honour pertyculer loue to hym that hath gyuen to them beyng, knowleche, lyf, it is wel requesyte nedeful that he haue honour and reuerence that hath made heuen and erthe, al that therein enhabyteth. Wherfore by good ryght he is superyour and abouen al; And a grete abusyon(*Note: "a grete abusyon:" Fr. grant abusyon .*)is comprysed in hym which gyueth fayth and hope in that whyche he hath made wyth hys hondes, of mater dede, Insensyble, and that hath neyther reson ne soule, as thy goddes dyabolyke, whyche may not ne can gyue consolacyon to theyr subgettes. Wherfore I warne the for the helthe of thy soule, and for the preseruynge of thy body of thy goodes, that thou take awaye alle these Iniquytees and peruerse affectyons, byleue in the holy Trynyte, fader, sone, and holy ghoost, one onely god almyghty; and byleue that the sone of god, for to repayre thoffence of our formest fader adam, descended in to thys world, and took humanyte in the wombe of the blessed vyrgyn marie, whyche was al pure and wythoute spotte. And byleue in the artycles of the fayth, and obeye and kepe hys comandementes, which he hath gyuen to vs for our helth. and byleue how he was taken of the Iewes, and by enuy hanged on the crosse for to redeme vs fro the paynes of helle. Byleue hys resurrexyon and ascencyon in hys body gloryfyed, and the other thynges, as the holy baptesme whyche he hath establysshed, wyth the other sacramentes. yf thou wylt thus byleue thou salt be saued, thou salt neyther lose body ne goodes." Thadmyral answerd that he wold no thyng do so, and sware that for deth ne for lyf

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

he wold not leue Mahon. Themperour holdyng a naked swerd, sayd to hym, that yf he forsoke not Mahon he sold do put ym to deth. Fyerabras, seyng thys, kneled down to therthe, prayed hys fader to do as the emperour had sayd. Thadmyral fered the deth, sayd that he was contente that the fonte sold be blessed. Charles was glad, and dyd do make redy a fonte wyth fayr water in a fayr vessel; and the byssshop wyth other mynystres of the chyrche dyd halowe the fonte, and made alle redy. after, whan thadmyral was vncladde, the byssshop demaunded hym, sayeng: "Syr ballant, forsake ye mahon, and crye ye mercy to god of heuen for your trespasses? and byleue ye in Ihesu cryst, the sone of the vyrgyn marye?" whan thadmyral vnderstode these wordes, al hys body began to tremble. than, in despyte of Ihesus, he spytte in the fonte, and caught the byssshoop, wold haue drowned hym in the fonte, and had plunged hym therin, ne had not Ogyer haue been, whyche letted hym, yet notwythstandyng, he gaf a grete stroke to thadmyral, that the blood came oute of ys mouthe habondantly. Of thys were al abasshed that were present; and thenne the kyng sayd to Fyerabras: "ye be my specyal frende, Ye see that your fader wyl neuer be crystened, And also the oultrage that he hath doon to the fonte, it can not be excused but that he must be dede and dysmembred."

Fyerabras requyred hym yet of a lytel pacyence, and yf he wold not amende hym, that thenne he sold doo hys wylle.

Florypes, the daughter of the Admyrall, seeyng thys, sayd:

"O Syr Emperour, wherfore delaye ye so moche to put thys deuyll to deth? I retche not though he be put to deth, so that I onely may haue guye of bourgoyne to myn husbond, whom I haue so moche desyred." Fyerabras answerd: "fayr suster, ye haue grete wronge. For I ensure you, and swere by god whiche hath made me, that I wold that I had lost two of my membres, on the condycyon that he were a good cristen man, were baptysed and byleued in Ihesu Cryst. ye wote wel that he is our fader whiche hath engendred vs; we ought to honour hym, and to loue hys helth. ye are wel obstynat whan ye haue of hym noo pyte." And after in wepyng sayd to his fader: "O moost dyer fader, I praye you to be better aduysed, and byleue in hym that hath fourmed you to hys ymage, whyche is Ihesus, god souerayn, lyke as themperour hath sayd; and leue mahon, which hath neither wytte ne reason, ne noo thyng is but gold stones, wherof he is composed. yf ye thus do, ye sal do to vs grete Ioye, of your enemyes ye shal make frendes."

Ballant ansuerd: "fool glouton that thou art, speke nomore to me therof, thou art al oute of reson! I shal neuer byleue in hym that deyed V. C. yere a-goone, acursed be he that putteth in hys byleue that he is arysen fro deth to lyf. by mahon, my god, yf I were on my hors back, or I were taken, I shold angre charles, that fool." whan fyerabras had al vnderstonden hym, he said to charles that he shold do wyth hym hys playsyr, "For by good ryght he ought to deye." Anon themperour demanded who wold slee ballant, the vnmesurable felon. Thenne Ogier was present which hated hym in his hert, forthwyth he smote of hys heed, Fyerabras pardonned hym gladly. Thenne after this, florypes sayd to Rolland that he sold accomplysshe his promesses by-twene yr and guy of bourgoyn. rolland ansuerd: "ye say trouthe," and after sayd to guye: "Syr, ye remembre wel what wordes and loue hath been bytwene you the curtoys Florypes: kepe your trouthe and promesse to hyr." Guy ansuerd that he was redy to do al that themperour wold haue hym to doo. Charles was contente. Thenne anone afore theym alle se was despoyled, and vnclad hyr for to be baptysed. She beyng there al naked, sewed hyr beaute, whyche was ryght whyte and wel formed, so playsaunt and amerouse for the formosyte of hyr persone, that euery man merueylled. For she had hyr eyen as clere as two sterres, a fayre forhede and large, hyr nose ryght wel standyng in the myddes of the vysage; hyr chekes were reed whyt medled, hyr browes compaced as it had been a lytel sadowe to the colour of the vysage; hyr heyr synyng as golde, that in soo good an ordre accumyled that it henge bynethe hyr (*Note: orig. kues.*)knees; hyr mouth was wel composed with an attemperat roundenes, a smal longe necke, and hyr soldres fayr wel syttyng, ij pappes tofore, smale, rounde, somewhat enhaunced lyke ij rounde apples. And so wel was se made, and so amerouse, that se smote the hertes of many, and enflammed theyr entencyon wyth concupyscence, and specyally of charles the Emperour, how wel that he was auncyen olde; and in the fonte whyche was ordeyned for the Admyral hyr fader, se was baptysed. And charles Duc thyery of ardayne were her godfaders, wythout chaunchyng hyr name. And anone after, whan se was honourably cladde, the byssshop wedded them, after,

How the peres of Fraunce whyche were in the toure came oute whan they sawe the hoost, how thadmyral was

themperour comanded to brynge forth the crowne of ballant, and crowned wyth—al guy of bourgoyn and Florypes. And the bysshop sacred and blessed them. And so tho said guy was kyng of that contreye, gaf a partye to Fyerabras, by condycion, that yf Fyerabras wold haue it, he sold holde it of guye, and all that euer(*Note: orig. ener.*) guye sold haue, he sold holde it of charles. After thys, the feest of the weddyng and espousaylles endured viij dayes. And charles abode there two monethes and two dayes, tyl that the contreye was wel assured.

How Florypes delyuerd the reliques to themperour, and how they were proued' by myracle, of the retournyng' of Charles, and of the ende of thys book. capitulo xvj

Charles dyd suche dylygence in aygremore and in the contreye adiacent, that he that wold not be baptysed was put to deth, and so serched oueral. And on a sonday after masse he sente for florypes, and sayd to yr: "fayr doughter, ye knowe how I haue crowned you and maad you quene of thys contree. I haue accomplysshed your desyre as to guye of bourgoyn, your husbond, And more ouer ye be baptysed, and in waye of sauacyon, and ye haue one of the valyauntest body that is from hens in to Affryque. And he and fyerabras your broder sal haue thys regyon, And I shal leue with hym xx M of my subgetes, to the ende that the paynims be alwaye in drede; but ye haue not yet shewed to me nothyng of the holy relyques that ye kepe." Florypes answerd: "Syr emperour, they sal be redy whan it pleseth you," and thenne se brout forth the chest in whyche they were honestly.

Themperour kneled down on bothe ys knees, and enclyned bothe wyth hert body, and bad the bysshop to opene it, sewe them, and so he dyd. And fyrst he sewed the precyous crowne with whyche Ihesu Cryst was crowned wyth, whyche was of pryckyng thornes of Ionques of the see. and wyth grete deuocyon it was sewed adoured. And many there wepte wayled the deth of our lord Ihesu Cryst, and were in grete deuocyon contemplacyon. The byssop, which was deuoute wyse, wold preue it, And lyfte it vp on ye in the ayer, wythdrewe hys hond, and the crowne abode by itself in the ayer. thenne the bysshop certefyed to the (*Note: orig. peyle.*)people that was present, that it was the crowne of Ihesu cryst, which he had on his hede in the tyme of his passyon. Thenne euery man honoured it deuoutely; it had soo grete an odour that eueryche meruaylled. and after, the bysshop took the naylles by whyche god had hys handes(*Note: orig. haudes.*) feet perced, and proued them as he had proued the crowne tofore, and semblably they abode in the ayer myraculously. And Charles, seyng al this, thanked humbly God in sayeng: "O lord god eternal, whyche hast gyuen to me grace that I haue surmounted myn enemyes Infydels, and hast put sette me in the waye, and gyuen conduyte to fynde your relyques whyche I haue so longe desyred, I humbly rendre and gyue to you thankes and praysynges. For now my contrey may wel say that it shal be perpetuel honour to hit to possede and haue thys precious tresour, whan it sal be conteyned therin." The bysshop blessyd alle the people there in makyng the sygne of the crosse with the said relyques, after he sette them deuoutely ageyn in their places. And the emperour dyd do sette them on a ryche cloth of golde deuoutely. And whan they were theron, the remenaunt that abode of them as smale pyeces, he took them deuoutely and put them in hys gloue; and after, he beyng in purpoos to retorne in to hys contreye, he threwe the gloue to a knyght, but the knyght took none hede took it not; whan Charles was a litel withdrawen he took hede of hys gloue, returned and sawe hys gloue, in whyche the said smale pyeces of the sayd relyques were, abode hangyng in thayer without susteynyng of ony thyng. Thenne was this myracle seen euydently, and al thys was sewed to the peple, For it abode in that maner whyles they myght haue goon half a leghe. And by this they were al reconfermed to say that there was none abusyion in byleuyng adouryng the sayd relyques. (*Note: "that there was non abusyion, &c.:" Fr. quil ny auoit point dabusion en croire et adorer les distes reliques.*) And these thynges tofore writon in this second book ben vnderstonden in the best partye sygnifycacion that I can or wold say, And I haue not sayd ony thyng but that I haue been wel enformed by writyng. And as for the book ensuyng, it sal make mencion of somme bataylles, and of the ende of the barons of fraunce, of whome I haue tofore spoken al alonge.

Here begynneth the iij book, whyche conteyneth two partyes, by the chapytres folowyng declared'.

The fyrst partye of the thyrd book conteyneth xiiij chapytres, and speketh of the warres made in spayne, and' of two meruayllous geauntes.

How Saynt Iames appyered' to Charles, and how, by the moyen and' the conduyte of the sterres, he went in to galyce, what cytees he subdued: ca. j

Charles, the noble Emperour, after he had taken moche payne for to mayntene the name of god for tenhaunce the crysten fayth, and to brynge al the world in one trewe fayth and byleue, that he had gotten many contrees, he purposed neuer more to fyght ne to make bataylle, but to reste lede forth a contemplatyf lyf, in thankyng his maker of þ^e grace that he had gyuen to hym in surmountyng hys enemyes. Neuertheles on a nyght it happed hym that he byhelde the heuen, sawe a quantyte of sterres in ordre tendyng alle the nyght one waye and one path. And they began at the see of fryselond in passyng bytwene alemayn and ytalye, bytwene Fraunce and guyanne, And passed ryght the sayd sterres by gascoyne, bascle, Nauarre, and espayne, whyche contrees he had by hys puyssaunce and contynuel payne conquerd and maad crysten. And after, the ende of the sayd sterres thus goyng in ordre, cam vnto galyce, where—as the body of the holy appostle was, he nat knowyng the propre place. Euery nyght charles byhelde the waye of the sayd sterres, and thought moche contynuelly what thys mygt be, that it was not wythoute cause. In one nyght emonge the other that charles thought on thys waye, a man appyered to hym in vysyon, whyche was so fayr, so playsaunte, and so synyng, that it was meruaylle; whyche sayd to hym: "what doost thou, my fayre sone?" Charles, beyng al rauysshed,(*Note: "al rauysshed:" Fr. tout rauy.*) answerd: "who arte thou, fayr syr?" That other answerd: "I am Iames, the appostle of Ihesu Cryst, the sone of Zebedee, and propre broder of saynt Iohan the euangelyst, am he whom god chaas to preche the crysten fayth and hys doctryne in the londe of galyce and of galylee, by hys holy grace, and he whom herode dyd put to deth by swerde; and my body abyde emonge the sarasyns, whyche haue entreated it vylaynsly, lyeth in a place whyche is not knowen. But I merueylle that thou hast not conquerd my londe, Seen and consyderyd that thou hast conquerd so many regyones, townes, cytees in the world. wherfore I do the to wete, that lyke as god hath chosen the, and made the superyor in worldly puyssaunce aboue al other kynges worldly prynces, in lyke wyse emong al them that lyuen thou art chosen of god, after the conduyte of the sterres, to delyuer my londe fro the hande of the mescreaunt sarasyns and enemyes of crystendom. And to thende that thou soldest knowe in to what place thou soldest goo, thou hast seen on the heuen the sterres by dyuyne magnyfycence. And for to obteyne the more loye gretter glorye in heuen, by haultayn and grete puyssaunce, thou salt surmounte thyn enemyes, in that same place thou shalt make and doo edefye a chyrche in my name, to the whiche shal come the crysten peple of al regyons, for to gete helthe pardon of their synnes. After that thou salt haue vysited my sepulture, and haue made the waye sure, and ordeyned crysten men for to kepe and conserue the place, it sal be a memoyre perpetuell." Thus in thys maner appyered thre tymes saynt Iames to the emperour Charles. After these vysyons and certyfycacyons of god, he called and assembled hys subgettes, whome he dyd do put a grete multytude in good poynte, after took hys waye drewe toward the contre where the sterres had shewed the waye aforesayd, and came fyrst in to spayne: and the fyrst cyte that was rebelle to hym was panpylonne, whyche was ryght stronge of murayl and towres, garnysshed wyth sarasyns. and he abode tofore it thre monethes, or he coude fynde maner to confounde it. Thenne Charles knewe not what to do, but to praye god and saynt Iames, for whom he went, that in the vertu of hys name he myght take that cyte, and sayd in thys manere: "Fayr lord god, my maker, helpe me that am comen in to thys contree for to enhaunce the crysten fayth, for to establysshe and mayntene thyn holy name. And also thou holy saynt Iames, by the reuelacyon of whome I am in thys Iourneye, I requyre the that I may subdewe thys cytee, entre therin, for to sewe the mysbyleuyng peple the cause of theyr errour, to thende that this begynnyng may the better determyne the ende of myn entencion."

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

Assone as Charles had fynnyssed his oryson, the walles of the cyte, whyche were of marble merueillously strong, ouerthrew to the erthe, (*Note: "ouerthrew to the erthe:" Fr. vont tomber par terre*) fyl alle in pyeces; and after, charles and his hoost entred in to the cyte; he that wold be baptysed byleue in god wythoute fyctyon, was saued and put a–parte, and who sayd the contrarye, was forthwyth put to deth. Al the people of that contre, whan they knewe of these tydynges meruayllous operacyons of this cyte, torned in to Ruynes at the symple postulacyon of charles, without contradycyon came and yelded them to the mercy of kyng charles. And thus many were baptysed, and cyrches were ordeyned, and al the contreye reduced to certeyn trybute vnder the fydelite of the emperour charles, and brought theyr trybutes fro the cytees wyth–oute ony other gaynsayeng in sygne of seynourye.

Of the cytees gotten in espayne by charles, how somme were by hym destroyed'. capitulo ij.

After that charles had the domynacyon quasi in al espayne, he came to the sepulture of Saynt Iames, where he dyd hys deuocyon, and made deuoutely hys prayers; after came to a place in þ^e lond which was so ferre, that he myght goo no ferther, and there fyxed pyght hys spere, and that place was called petronium; thanked god and saynt Iames, that by theyr suffraunce he was comen so ferre wythoute ony contradycyon surely vnto suche place that he myght passe no ferther. And in that londe who that wold byleue in god, tharchebysshop Turpyn baptysed them; who that wold not, he was slayn, or put in pryson. And after Charles wente from one see to that other, and thenne he gate in galyce xiiij cytees, emonge whome compostelle was thenne the leste. In espayne he had xvj grete townes stronge, emonge whome was onsea, in which were wont to be x stronge toures, a toun named petrosse, in whyche was made the fynest syluer that had thenne cours. Also another cyte named attentyua, where as the body of saynt Torquete rested, whyche was dysciple of saynt Iames, and there vpon the sepulture was an olyue tree, whyche dyd florysshe bere rype fruyt a certayn day of may euery yere withoute fayllyng.

Alle the contreye of spayne that tyme was subgette to charles, That is to wete, the londe of alandaluf, the londe of perdoures, the londe of castellans, the londe of maures, The londe of portyngale, the londe of sarasyns, the londe of nauarre, the londe of Alemans, The londe of byscoys, the londe of bascles, the londe of palargyens, and somme of theyr cytees taken by warre, subtil and mortal, And somme wythoute warre. he coude not wynne the grete towne of Lucerne, tyl at the laste he layed syege tofore it by the space of foure monethes. and it stode in a grene valeye. And after, whan he saw that they wold not yelde them, that he coude not wynne them, he made hys prayer vnto god, and to saynt Iames, that he myght be vycorious, seen that he had nomore to termyne in that contreye, but that cyte onely. hys oryson was herde, soo that the walles fyl down to the erthe, and was put to destructyon in suche wyse, þat neuer man dwelled therin after, and after it sanke, and therin was an abysme or swolowe of water, In whyche were founden after, fysshes alle blacke. Emonge the other cytees that he took, there were iiij that dyd hym moche payne, or he myght gete them, therefore he gaf them the maladyctyon of god, and they were cursed, in suche wyse that vnto thys day there is in them none habytacion; the sayd cytees been named lucerne, ventose, caperce, adame.

Of the grete ydole that was in a cyte, whyche coude not be smyton down, and of the condycyons and' sygnes therof: ca. iij

Whan Charles had doon in spayne other places, wyth the Inhabytauntes of it at hys wylle, Alle thyddolles and other symylacres that he fonde, he dyd do destroye and put to confusyon. But in the londe of Alandaluf, in a cyte called Salancadys, in arabyque, was (*Note: orig. and was.*) the place of a grete god, as the sarasyns sayd. That ydolle was made of the honde of Machomete in the tyme that he lyued, was named Mahomet in thonour of hym: and by arte magyke and dyabolyke he closed therin a legyon of deuylls, for to kepe it and make sygnes for to abuse the peple. and thys ydolle was kepte so by deuylls, that noo persone lyuyng coude by strengthe destroye it, ne put it down. In suche wyse that yf ony crysten man came nyghe for to see it, or to coniure it, or to destroye, Assone as he began to coniure and preche, anon he was perysshed destroyed. And the sarasyns that came for to preche,

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

adoure, make sacrefyse, or doo obeyssaunce therto, were wythout peryl; and yf by aduenture, a byrde fleying came rested vpon it, Incontynent it was deed. The stone vpon whyche thydolle was sette was meruayllously made. It was a stone of the see, wrought of sarasyns, and grauen subtylly of grete and ryche facyon, the whyche was enhaunced vpryght, not without grete crafte connyng. toward the erth it was meruayllously grete, alway vpward it was lasse; and that stone was so hye as a crowe myght flee: vpon whyche stone was thydolle sette, whyche was of fyn yuorye, after thassemblaunce of a man stondyng vpryght on his feet, had hys face torned to the south, helde in his ryght honde a grete keye, the sarasyns were certefyed for trouthe that whan a kyng of fraunce shold be borne, in strengthe to subdue the contreye of spayne, and brynge it in to crysten fayth, the ymage sold lete falle the keye, whych shold be a sygne þat the kyng of fraunce sold conquere them. So thenne in the tyme that the noble kyng charles regned in spayne, for to brynge it to the crysten faith, the ydolle lete the keye falle down to the grounde. And whan the sarasyns sawe that, They hydde theyr tresours, as golde, syluer, and precyous stoones, in therth, by cause the crysten men sold no thyng fynde therof, they al wente in to another regyon, and durst not abyde the comyng of the kyng.

Of the chyrche of saynt Iames in galyce, and' of dyuers other whyche Kyng' Charles founded: capitulo iiij

Charles beyng in galyce had Innumerable quantyte of gold, of syluer, and of precyous stones, of many kynges, prynces, and other lordes, and of trybutes of cytees that was gyuen to hym as lord.

Also he had moche of the tresour that he conquerd of the townes and contreyes of Spayne aforesayd. Thenne he, seyng the grete habundaunce of good, dyd do compose and make a chirche of Saynt Iames, in the place where—as he had founde the body of hym. and he abode there the space of thre yere wythout departyng, and in that same place he ordeyned a bysshop, and founded there chanonnes reguler, vnder the rule of saynt Ysodore the confessour; bought ordeyned for them rentes trybutes suffycient, and gaf to them synguler seygnourye. He furnysshed the chyrche wyth belles, vessellys of golde and syluer, adornements of precyous clothes, al thynges necessarye apperteynyng in a chyrche pontyfycal. also of bokes, vestymentes, chalyses, other holy escriptures. And of the resydue of gold and syluer, that he brought oute of spayne, he dyd doo edefye these chyrches folowyng. Fyrst, at Acon, in almayne, where as he is buried, he dyd doo make a chirche of our lady; and though it be lytel, yet is it moche rychely made. The chyrche of Saynt Iames in the toun of vyterbe; also the chyrche of saynt Iames in the cytee of Tholouse: The chyrche of Saynt Iames in gascoyne; also the chirche of saynt Iames in parys, bytwene the sayne the mounte of martres. aboute the chyrches aforesayd, he founded, rented, releued many dyuers chyrches, monasteryes, other abbeyes in the world, in many and dyuers places. (*Note: "he founded, rented, and releued many and dyuers chyrches:" Fr. il fonda, renta, et releua plusieurs et diuerses eglises.*)

How, after that Aygolant the geaunt had taken spayne put to deth the crysten people, Charles recouerd' it, and' other maters: capitulo v

After that charles was retorned in to Fraunce, a kyng sarasyn of affryque, named aygolant, wyth grete puyssaunce came in to spayne, and remysed it in hys subgectyon. And the crysten which charles had left there, as many as he myght gete, he put to deth, and the other fledde. And in sorte tyme the tydynges came vnto kyng Charles, wherof he was moche abashed angry, bycause it was sewed to hym so pyetously. wherfore Incontynent he assembled a grete hoost, wyth a grete multytude of fyghtyng men he went thyder wythout taryeng. And he made the conduytour of them al Myllon of angleres, the fader of Rolland. (*Note: See Dr. Hausknecht's note to the Sowdon, l. 1888.*) they cessed not tyl that they had tydynges where Aygolant the geaunt was, whyche had doon thys feat. whan charles knewe where Aygolant was lodged, and semblably aygolant knewe where Charles was, Anone the geaunt sente to charles that he wold delyuer bataylle suche as he wold. That is to wete that Charles shold sende to hym xx of hys men to fyght ageynst xx of hys sarasyns, or xl ayenst xl, or an C ayenst C, or a thousand ayenst a thousand, or two men ayenst two, or one man ayenst one man onely. kyng Charles, seyng thentencion of aygolant, for thonour of noblesse he wold not refuse hys demaunde, but sent to hym an C knyghtes in grete

Of the chyrche of saynt Iames in galyce, and' of dyuers other whyche Kyng' Charles founded: capitulo ~~viij~~ **v**

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

poynte, and the geaunte sente another hondred ayenst the crysten men, but anone the sarasyns were vanquysshed put to deth, and after were sente by aygolant two hondred sarasyns ayenst two hondred crysten men, whyche Sarasyns were anone wythoute grete resystence put to deth and slayn. Aygolant was not contente, ne wold not leue herby, (*Note: "he wold not leue herby:" would not stop at this. Fr. ne se vouldst tenir a cecy.*) but sente two thousand sarasyns ayenst ij M crysten men, and whan they were in batayll, many of þ^e sarasyns were slayn, and the other put to flyght for to saue them self. The thyrd day after, Aygolant maad certeyn experyences, (*Note: "maad certeyn experyences:" Fr. fist aulcunes experimentacions.*) and knewe that yf Charles made warre to hym he sold haue grete losse, and sent to Charles to wete yf he wold make playne warre. Charles was contente, and there vpon they made redy theyr peple, and specyally charles, for hys subgettes had grete affectyon to goo to bataylle without ony fere of deth. And also somme of the crysten men, the day tofore the bataylle, dyd do amende and araye theyr harnoys, and sette theyr tentes nygh a ryuer named ceye, and pyght there theyr speres, euen in the place where as the bodyes of saynt faconde and saynt premytyf rested, where after was made a chyrche deuoutely founded, and also a stronge cyte by the moyen of the sayd Charles, and in the place where the speres were pyght, our lord sewed grete myracle. For of them that sold deye there and be gloryfyed marters of god crowned in heuen, theyr speres on þ^e morn were founden al grene, floresshed and leued, whyche was a precedent sygne that they whyche sold deye sold haue the Ioye in heuen. Eche man took his owne, and cutte of the bowes leues, wyth whyche the leues were planted and vnderroted, wherof in a lytel whyle after grewe a grete wode, whyche stondeth there yet. It was grete meruayle of the Ioye that the horses made, whyche dyd theyr deuoyrs as wel as the men after theyr qualyte, whyche was a grete token. Thenne L valyaunt crysten men were slayne, And emonge the other was slayne duc Myllon, fader to Roulland. Also that same day the hors of charles was slayn vnder hym, whan he was a fote he maad grete murdre wyth hys swerde Ioyouse, and dyd so moche that the sarasyns, dredyng the euenyng, fledde wythdrewe them in to place of surete. And as it was the wylle of our lord, the next day after came to Charles in to his helpe iiij marquyse of ytalye, accompanied wyth iiij M stronge fyghtyng men chosen. wherfore Aygolant, assone as he knewe of theyr comyng, he fled and wythdrewe hym ouer the see toward hys contree. but they myt not for hast bere with them al theyr tresours, wherfor fraunce was enryched meruayllously aboute alle other contrees.

And whan charles sawe his departyng he came wyth al hys rychesse in to fraunce, and thenne, duryng seuen yere, he dyd do ordeyne the seruyce and offyce of the chyrche by preestes clerkes, and the festes of sayntes of all the yere; and grete vertu meruayllous effect was comprysed in thys man. For whan it was not warre for to mynysshe thynfydellys and encrease the crysten fayth, For tenhaunce the name of god he made the offyces and legendes of holy sayntes, dyd reduce in to mynde and remembraunce the passyons of holy marters in establysshyng theyr feestes, to thende that we sold ensyewe them, and to eschewe al euyl. And the magnytude of thys kyng was wel preued by sygnes seen on the heuen. For in the same yere the mone derked thre tymes, and the sonne ones, and companyes of people were seen meruayllous, whyche sewed that thys Charles was of grete magnytude, that is to wete bytwene heuen and erthe.

How Aygolant sent to charles that he shold' come to hym trustely for to make lust warre, and' how Charles in habyte dyssymyled' spake to hym, and' of other maters: capitulo vj

As I haue sayd the kyng, Aygolant the geaunte, fledde in to nys contreye, whan socours cam to Charles of foure marques. he slepte not vpon his purpoos, but maad grete dyligence for to assemble hys peple, whyche were sarasyns Innumerable, for he assembled mores, Moabytes, Ethiopiens, Affrycans, and percyens; he brought wyth hym also the kyng of arabye, the kyng of barbarye, the kyng of malroste, the kyng of maioryke, the kyng of meques, the kyng of cybylle, the kyng of Cordube, the whych cam with peple wythout nombre, certain, in to gascoyne, in to a stronge cyte named Agenne, and took it. And after sent to Charles that he shold come to hym peasybly trustely, with a fewe peple, promysyng to hym for to gyue to hym ix hors laden with gold, syluer, and precyous stones, yf he wold thus come at hys desyre. this paynym shewed to hym this by cause he wold knowe his persone, for hys strengthe puyssaunce knewe he wel by experyence, and also to thende whan he knewe ym

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

that he myght in the warre flee hym. whan kyng charles knewe this mandement he gadred not grete peple, but he came onely wyth ij M knyghtes of honour and of grete strength. And whan he was foure myle nygh the cyte, where Aygolant and al the kynges tofore named were, he left his people secretly, came vnto a mountayne nygh the cyte, accompanied wyth xl knyghtes onely. And fro thys place they saw the cyte, by cause to wete yf the multytude of peple were departed, soo tat he shold not be deceyued. Neuertheles vpon thys montayne he lefte hys people secretly, and took of hys clothes, and cladde hym in the guyse of a messenger, and took one knyght onely with hym, whyche bare his spere swerde and bocler vnder hys mantel, and soo came in to the cyte, and anone he was brought tofore aygolaunt the geaunt. And whan he was tofore hym he sayd in thys manere: "Charles the kyng hath sente vs vnto the, and leteth the wete by vs that he is comen lyke as thou hast comanded, accompanied wyth fourty knyghtes onely, for to do that he ought to doo. Now thenne come to hym wyth xl knyghtes, withoute moo, yf thou wylt accomplysse and holde that thou hast promysed." Aygolant sayd to hem that they shold retorne to charles, and that they shold say to hym that he departe not, but abyde hym there, and he wold come and vysyte hym. After this that charles had knowen the geaunt, and after vysyted the towne, for to knowe the feblest parte for to take and conquer it whan he shold come ageyn, sawe al the kynges forsayd their puysaunces, he after returned to his peple whiche he had left vpon the montayne, after came to hys ij M knyghtes. anone after aygolant, accompanied wyth vij M knyghtes, came after them withoute taryeng. But charles took hede (*Note: "took hede:" Fr. *sen prist garde* = took notice.*) whan he cam that there were many moo paynymys than crysten men, and wythout lenger taryeng charles his peple departed, and returned in to fraunce wythout hauyng other delyberacyon.

How Charles, accompanied with moche peple, returned' in to the place aforesayd toke the cyte of agenne, other maters: capitulo vij

After that charles was returned in to fraunce he assembled moche peple, after came to the cyte of agenne, assyged it there by grete facyon, the space of vij monethes. Aygolant was therin many sarasyns, the crysten men had made fortressis castelles of tree tofore this cyte for to greue it. Whan Aygolant the grete lordes of is companye sawe þat they myght not endure, they maad hoolles caues vnder therth for tescapen oute secretly: in that maner they came out of the cyte, passed ouer a ryuer, which ranne by the cyte, named goronna, and so they saued them self. The next day after, whan there was noo grete resystence made to the crysten men, Charles wyth grete tryumphe puysaunce entred in to the cyte, put to deth x M sarasyns that he there fonde. The other, seyng that, put them to flyght by the ryuer. Aygolant was in another stronge toun, whan charles knewe it he came thyder assaylled it, sente to hym to delyuer ouer the cyte. aygolant ansuerd that he wold not so doo, but by a moyen that was, that they shold make a batayll, he that shold wyne the bataylle shold be lord of þe toun, so they assygned the day of the bataylle. and nygh to that place, bytwene the castel thalabout a ryuer called carantha, somme of the crysten men planted theyr speres in the grounde, especially they that on the morn shold deye, obteyne the crowne of glorie as marters of god. and on the morne they fonde theyr speres al grene myraculously leued, ful of bowes, wherof the cristen men were moche Ioyous of this myracle, and raught not for to deye for þe crysten fayth in mayntenynge the name of god. After that they cutte of theyr speres and wente to bataylle, and put many sarasyns to deth. But in thende were slayn and martred, of crysten men moo than iiij M whyche were saued in heuen; that tyme the hors that Charles rode on was slayn vnder hym, and at that bataylle were slayn by the sayd Charles the kyng of Agabye the kyng of bugye, merueyllous myghty sarasyns.

Of the vertuous operacions that charles made whan he was returned' in to fraunce, what barons he had' in hys companye, of theyr puysaunce: ca. viij

The bataylle toforesayd made, Aygolant fledde and came in to panpylone, and sent to kyng charles that he shold abyde hym for to gyue hym bataylle more ample large. Whan charles knewe hys desyre he returned in to fraunce for to haue helpe of hys peple, and made an open maundement thorug out al Fraunce that al maner peple that were of euyl condycyon and in bondage, that they that were present, and theyr successours, sold be free, there vpon

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

tabellyons sold be delyuerd accordyng to the lawe,(*Note: Fr. eulx qui estoient presens et leurs successeurs fussent francs et liberez, les taillables fussent a leurs drois comme quilz fussent condicionez.*) that wold goo with hym ayenst the myscreautes. Also alle prysonners that were in fraunce, he delyuerd them al out of pryson, to al them that shold haue ben delyuerd to deth for felonnye, murdre, or treason, he pardonned them gaf to them theyr lyf; and to al poure peple that had not wherby to lyue, he gaf to them good largely, them that were euyll clad, he clothed them after theyr degree. alle them that were at debate he peased them accorded; Alle them þat were dyssheryted put oute from theyr lyuelode he restored al to them; Alle þe peple that myght bere armes he armed them. The valyaunt squyers of theyr persones he made knyghtes, al them that were in hys Indygnacyon pryued fro hys loue, bannysshed for the loue of god, he was constraynede to pardonne them, made pees with euery man. and thenne he was fournysshed of moo than an C thousand men wel fyghtyng, wythoute them that were a-fote, whyche were Innumerable. And for to gyue courage to the prynces of Charles, Turpyn sayd in this maner: "I, Turpyn, archebyssshop of Raynes by the grace of god, shal gyue good courage to crysten people, and shal slee the Infydels, sarasyns, with myn owne handes." Wyth Charles was Roulland of Cenonye, neuewe of Charles, sone of hys syster, dame Be the, of Duke Myllon, wyth foure thousand fyghtyng men; Olyuer, due of genes, sone of duc Reyner, with iij M fyghtyng men: Aristagius, kyng of brytayne, wyth vij thousand fyghtyng men; Not wythstondyng that in brytayne was another kyng, Eugelius, whyche was duke of Guyan, whome Augustus Cezar had ordeyned, wyth the byturyciens, the monyques, pictauyns, scauctonens, and Elogysmes, cytees with their prouynces vnder guyan: he cam with iij M horsmen good fyghtars; Garferus, kyng of bordeloyes, with iiij M men; Salamon, fellow of estok;(*Note: "felow:" Fr. *compaignon de escoc.**) bawdewyn, brother of Rolland; Naymes, duc of bauyere, wyth x M fyghtyng men; Hoel of Nautes, Lambert, prynce of bourgoyn, wyth ij M fyghtars; Sanson, duc of bourgoyn, with x M; Garyn, duc of lorayne, many other; and Charles had of his owne contre moo than fyfty M men. The excercyte of Charles, the noble emperour, and ryght puyssaunt kyng of Fraunce, was so grete and so ample that it helde two iourneyes longe, in brede half o iourneye more; In suche wyse that of the bruyt that was made for the grete multytude of the frensshemen, it was herde two myle ferre and more.

Of the tryews of Charles of Aygolant, and of the deth of hys peple, wherfore aygolant was not baptysed': capitulo ix

The whyl that charles was a yonge chylde he lerned at Toulete the langage of sarasyns, and spake it whan he wold. Aygolant, thys geaunt and grete Lord, coude not absteyne hym, and cam nygh vnto crystyente, and sente to Charles to come to hym vnto Pampylone, and tryews was maad bytwene them. For Aygolant consyderyd the multytude of hys people and the puyssaunces of their persones. For by cours of nature hym semed he shold surmounte the crysten peple, but he thought that the god of crysten people was more certayn and trewe than the god of the paynymys; but er he wold declyne fro the worsypyng of hys goddes, he had desyre to assaye yet ones the nombre of paynymys ayenst the nombre of crysten men. And he was contente to make a pacte and couenaunt wyth charles, that he that shold obteyne the vycторыe vpon others peple, that his god were holden and worsypped, And that the god of hym that shold lose the bataylle shold be of noo valure, renyed, and reputed for nought. And vpon thys couenaunte were sente twenty crysten knyghtes ayenst xx knyghtes paynymys. And anone as they were assembled and medled to-gyder, the twenty sarasyns were slayn. And after were sente fourty ayenst fourty, And anone the sarasyns were slayn and vaynquysshed. And after he sent an C. ayenst an C., but they were not slayne, but fledde. Aygolant thout he wold do better, and sent ij hondred ayenst ij C., and anone the sarasyns were ouercomen slayn. Thys geaunt was euyl contente of the destructyon of hys peple, and for to make a grete descomfyte, he sente a thousand sarasyns ayenst a M cristen men, and wythoute making grete rebellyon,(*Note: "wythoute making grete rebellyon:" without showing any great fight. Fr. *sans faire grandes rebellions.**) the sarasyns were anone slayn and put to deth. Thenne the kyng Aygolant, by experyence for-made, afermed the fayth the lawe of crysten peple to be better, more sure, more certeyn than the lawe of the paynymys and sarasyns, and thus he was enclyned to the crysten fayth, dysposed hym to receyue baptym on the morne without fayntyse; and here vpon he demanded tryews and surete for to goo come to Charles, he graunted it to hym wyth good hert. and thus atte houre of tyerce, whan charles was at dyner, Aygolant had entencyon to see charles and hys maner at mete, for to knowe hys astate, yf it were vayllicherous and soo grete as it was in armes and in bataylles. And also he

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

came pryncypally for to be baptysed, and he sawe Charles at hys table with grete magnyfycence, and after behelde the ordre of hys peple and sawe that somme were in habyte of knyghtes and grete prynces, Other in habyte of channons monkes; asked so that he was certefyed of euery ordre, and the cause of theyr estate, and after that he sawe in a parte of y^e halle syttyng on the grounde, xiiij poure persones, which dynded ete as other dyd. for charles of custom wold not take his repaste tyl he had xiiij poure men in the worsypp of our lord and of his xij appostles, he toke hede how these poure men satte on the grounde without towayl in ryght poure habyte, dynded al soroufully, he demaunded what people they were. Charles ansuerd sayd: "they be goddes peple and messagers of our lord Ihesu cryst, whome I susteyne in thonour of hym his xij appostles that he had with hym, gyue to them refectyon corporel." Aygolant said: "certeynlye he serueth euyl hys lord y^t receyueth his messagers in thys manere. I see wel that they that ben aboute the been in good poynt wel arayed, wel serued of mete drynke, the seruauntes of thy god lyue pourely euyl clothed ayenst y^e colde, ben withdrawen ferre fro the. he dooth grete shame to his lord that receyueth his messagers in this manere. more ouer, I see now wel that the lawe whyche thou hast sayd to me to be good holy, by thy werkes thou sewest them to be fals of no valewe." herof aygolant was all moeued troubled in his entendment, he beyng put out alle fro hys purpose, toke leue of the kyng retourned to hys peple, renounced to be baptysed, and sente word to charles for to begynne warre ageyn on y^e morne more stronge than euer he had doon tofore.

Of the deth of aygolant and of his peple, how moche crysten peple were slayn by concupyscence of syluer, of crysten men founden dede by myracle: ca. x

Whan charles sawe Aygolant come for to baptysse hym he was moche loyous, but whan he returned forsake it he was euyl contente, took aduys vpon the pour men whyche he sayd were messagers of god. For after the pouerte of them, and after that they were named, fore to holde them so, was none honour to theyr mayster, the emperour remembred wel that the peple of god ought to be receyued honestly, honourably holden serued. wherfor the poure men that he fonde in thexcercyte he dyd them to be wel clothed honestly, and gaf to them mete largely, And took suche custome in hym self that he faylled not, but the pour peple were receyued with honour in his companye. vpon thys purpose on a day folowyng, the sarasyns put them to bataylle, and to fyght ayenst the crysten men by grete fyerste, and there was soo grete destructyon that day of the sarasyns, that the crysten men were empessed and lette by the blood that ranne so habundantly, as it had rayned many dayes water and blood. wherefore(*Note: orig. wherforr.*) Aygolant, seyng the destructyon of his peple as he that doubted nothyng to deye, aduaunced(*Note: orig. and aduaunced.*) so hym self that he was slayn and put to deth, and after the cristen men entred in to the cyte of pampylone, and put to deth al the sarasyns that they fonde therin.

Thenne the kyng of Cybylle the kyng of cordube saued them self with somme of their subgettes. After thys the crysten men ful of couetyse for to haue gold and syluer of the sarasyns that were deed returned, And whan they were wel charged laden wyth golde, syluer, and other hauoyr, the kyng of Cybylle and the kyng of Cordube took hede ther of, And wyth al their meyne came couertly vpon the crysten men, and put to deth moo than a thousand.

Thus may be knowen that the ardeur of concupyscence was cause of the deth of the soule wythoute vycorye, and to god dysplaysaunte. On the morne tydynges came how so many sarasyns were slayn, and specyally of aygolant, vnto the prynce of Nauarre named Furre, wherfore he sent to Charles to haue batayll ordynayre. Charles was so noble, so puyssaunt, so trustyng in god, whan he faught for the crysten fayth that he refused hym not. and after, at the day of bataylle, whyche was assygned on bothe partyes, Charles put hym self to prayer, and prayed god deuoutely that it plesed hym, to shew what crysten men sold deye in that bataylle. and on the day folowyng whan euery man was armed for to fyght, by the wylle of our lord Charles sawe that same day the sygne of the crosse alle rede vpon the soldres behynde vpon theyr harnoys. whan charles sawe it he thanked our lord had compassyon of theyr det, by cause of the valyaunce of theyr persones. Thenne he sent for all them that bare thensigne made them to goo in to hys oratorye, and after sette them fast therin, to the ende that they sold not take deth that day; and thenne wyth al his other hoost he went ayenst thoost of the prynce furre, but it was not longe but furre and hys

Of the deth of aygolant and of his peple, how moche crysten peple were slayn by concupyscence of syluer, of

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

people were destroyed and put to deth. and whan that was doon the emperour came in to hys oratorye vycoryous vpon hys enemyes, and fonde al them that were sette wythin dede expyred, thenne knewe he wel that alle they that were marked with the crosse were assygned that day to be receyued in to heuen with glorye crowne of marterdom, that it apperteyned not to Charles to prolonge theyr helthe. wherfore he is wel symple that wyl put hym in payne to eschewe the passage of whyche he is not maystre.

Of feragus the merueyllous geant, how he bare alwaye wyth hym the barons of fraunce wyth out daunger, how Roulland' faught wyth hym: capitulo xj.

After that aygolant was slayn, Furre, many kynges sarasyns as tofore is wryton, the tydynges cam to the admyral of babyloune, the which had a geant moche terryble, that was of the generacion of golias, he made hym to be accompanied with xx M turkes moche strong, and sente hym for to fyght ayenst charles themperour. For hys puyssaunce was redoubted thurgh the world, the sayd feragus cam vnto the cyte of vacyere, nygh to saynt Iames, bytwene cristendom hethenes, sent to Charles that he shold come to fyght ayenst hym. This geant was moche meruayllous, For he doubted neyther spere ne swerde, ne arowe, ne other shotte. And he had the strengthe of xl myghty men and stronge. Anone as Charles knewe the tydynges of hys comyng, he went to hym and was vpon his watche nygh by vacyere. Whan thys was knowen this geante yssued oute of the towne, and demaunded synguler persone ayenst a persone. (*Note: "demaunded synguler persone ayenst a persone:" Fr. *demanda a Charles bataille singuliere de personne a personne.**) Charles, whiche neuer had refused that to persone, sente to hym Ogyer the danoys. but whan the geant sawe hym allone on the felde, without makyng of ony semblaunte of warre, he came allone to hym, took hym wyth one hande put hym vnder hys arme, wythoute doynge to hym ony harme, and bare hym vnto hys lodgys, and dyd do put hym in pryson, and made nomore a-doo to bere hym, than dooth a wulf to bere a lytel lambe. The heyght of thys geant was of twelue cubytes: he had the face a cubyte brode, the nose a palme longe, the armes thyes four cubytes long. The backe of his hand was thre palmes longe. After that Ogyer was borne thus awaye, Charles sente raynold daulbepyn. whan Feragus sawe hym, he bare hym a-waye as lyghtly as the other. Charles was abashed and sent tweyne other, that is to wete, constayn of Rome, therle hoel. This geant took that one wyth (*Note: orig. wyght.*) the ryght honde and that other in the lyft honde, and bare them bothe tweyne in-to pryson in to hys lodgyng, that euery man myght see. yet after charles sent other tweyne, and semblably they were bothe borne away wythoute ony wythstandyng or contradycyon. whan Charles saw the feet of this man, he was al abashed, durst nomore sende ony persone. For no man myght resyste hym. Roulland, whyche was prynce of al thexcersyte of Charles, was euyl contente of thys that the geant was vycoryous, came to Charles and presented hym self for to goo fyght wyth hym, but charles wold not graunte hym. At the last, by force, he was constrayned to gyue to hym lycence, Roulland made hym redy, and cam tofore Feragus; but anone he was taken and reteyned wyth hys ryght hande lyke the other, and the geant layed hym tofore hym on hys hors. whan Rolland sawe that he was taken borne awaye soo vylaynsly (*Note: "soo vylaynsly:" Fr. *si villement.**) he took a grete (*Note: orig. gtete.*) courage in hym self, and called the name of Ihesus to help, to be in hys ayde, and tord hym ayenst Feragus, and took hym by the chynne, and made to ouerthrowe fro hys hors, fyl to the grounde, and rolland also. And after anone they arose, and eueryche took hys owne hors. Roulland, whyche was moche habyle and courageous, drewe hys swerde durandal and came ayenst the geant, and gaf soo grete a stroke on the Paynmys hors that he carf hym a-sondre in the myddes, and the paynym fyl to the erthe. Feragus, beyng euyl contente for hys hors that was dede, took hys swerde for to smyte Rolland, had slayne hym wyth the stroke yf he had attayned hym; but assone as he lyfte vp hys arme for to haue smyton Rolland, Roulland auauced hym self and smote the geant vpon the arme, with whiche he helde hys swerde, suche a stroke, that hys swerde fyl to the grounde; wherof Feragus had grete despyte and supposed to haue smyten hym wyth hys fyste, but he attayned rollandes hors in suche wyse that he slewe hym. Thus were they bothe two on fote, whyche wythoute swerd begynnen to fyght wyth theyr fystes and wyth stones contynuelly, tyl the houre of none: wherfore they bothe were wery, and took tryews to-gyder by one acorde vnto the morne, and that they shold fyght wythout spere and wythoute hors: and here vpon eche of them went vn-to hys lodgys.

Of feragus the merueyllous geant, how he bare alwaye wyth hym the barons of fraunce wyth out daunger, how

How on the morne rolland' and' Feragus foughten dysputeden the fayth, and by what moyen Feragus was slayn by Roulland': capitulo xij

The next day folowyng erly, Rolland and Feragus came to the felde of the bataylle. The geaunt brought hys swerde moche grete, but it was nothyng worth, for rolland made prouysyon of a grete staffe or clubbe, ryt longe wyth whyche he smote the geaunt; but he myght nowher hurte hym. also he smote hym with grete stones and rounde, coude in noo wyse hurte ne entre in—to hys flesshe. And in this maner they cessyd not to fyght tyl the houre of mydday. The geaunt was wery, and demaunded tryews of Rolland for to slepe and reste hym a lytel. Rolland was contente, and was so noble and so valyaunt, that whan the geaunt was layed he went and fette a grete stone and layed it vnder hys heed, to the ende that he myght the better slepe and reste at hys ease. And after that he had a lytel slepte, that he was awaked, he satte vp. And the noble Rolland came and sat by hym and sayd to hym: "I meruaylle moche of thy feat, How thou art so stronge and so terryble that thou mayst not be hurt ne wounded in thy body by swerd, ne by staffe, ne by stones, ne in(*Note: orig. im.*) noo wyse." The geaunt, which spake spaynyssh, sayd to hym: "I may not be slayn, but by the nauell." whan Rolland herde that he made semblaunte that he vnderstood hym not. After Feragus demaunded hym what was hys name, and of what lygnage he was. Rolland sayd to hym: "I am named Rolland, and am neuwe of charles, the ryght myghty Emperour." Feragus asked of hym what lawe he helde. Rolland ansuered: "I holde the cristen fayth by the grace of god." Feragus sayd: "what fayth is that, and who hath gyuen it?" to whyche Roulland ansuerd: "It is trouthe y^t after god almyty had made heuen and erthe, and our fyrst fader adam, which was dysobeyssaunt to hys commaundements; the world was Juged here in erthe wythoute hauyng of beatytude, ne of felycyte: and long tyme after the sone of god, the second persone of the Trynyte, remembred hym of the valure of the soule, the whiche is gyuen to euery persone, and descended fro heuen and took our humanityte and suffred greuouse passyon of paynes. And he beyng in thys world hath gyuen enseynements and stablyssed constytucyons for to saue vs, pryncypally who byleueth in hym in hys werkes parfychtly, and that he be baptysed, After thys mortel lyf he shal be saued in heuen: and, loo! thys is the fayth that I holde, in the which I wyl deye." And after that Feragus had made to hym many questyons in the fayth, and that Rolland had ansuerd to hym honourably in euery poynte, Feragus said in this manere: "thou art crysten, and wylt mayntene the fayth of whyche thou hast spoken, and I am a paynym, holde for my god Mahoun. who of vs tweyne that shal be vanquysshed ouercome, late hys lawe be holde for nougt and of noo valewe, and the fayth of hym that is vycorious late it be holden for good trewe, and that it be entyerly kepte and obserued." The valyaunt Rolland was contente ryght wel, accepted hys langage. thenne eche of them was redy to fyght. Anone Rolland came to hym, and Feragus lyft vp hys arme for to smyte Rolland moche malyciously, and Roulland sawe the stroke come vpon hym, and for to voyde it he launced hys staffe ayenst the swerde, and wyth the stroke the staffe was cutte asondre; and there—wythal the geaunt ranne to Rolland and had hym doun vnder hym. Rolland, consyderyng that he mygt not flee ne escape, he called in hys hert deuoutely the name of Ihesus, and yelded hym to god to the vyrgyn marye: he anon reprysed suche strengthe myt that he aroos a lytel, myghtyly repugned the geaunte, in suche manere that he brought the geaunte vnder hym, and thenne moche quyckly and subtylly he sete hande on hys swerde, and pryched hym in the nauyll therwyth, anone after aroos, and fledde al that he myt to thoost of charles. Anone as feragus felte hym self hurt in that place, he cryed so hye lowde, that alle they that were in that place were aferd abasshed of hys crye, he sayd: "O Mahomet, my god, to whom I haue gyuen my fayth, come socour me, for thou seest wel that I dye, and tarye noo lenger." with that hydous voys the sarasyns camen to hym and bare hym awaye in theyr armes the best wyse they coude vnto hys lodgys; and by that tyme rolland was comen alle hool and sauf vnto Charles. And forthwyth the crysten men went Impetuously vpon the Sarasyns that bare Feragus, and entred in to the cyte, and so moche dyd that the geaunt was dede, and after came in to the pryson valyauntly, and took out Ogyer, Regnault, Constantyn, Hoel, and the other prysonners.

How Charles went to Cordube, where the kyng of the same place and' the kyng' of Cybylle abode, for their destructyon: ca. xiiij

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

After thys aforesayd, the kyng Corbude and the kyng of Cybylle sent to Charles that he shold come to cordube for to fyght. Anone as charles knewe it, he came thyder wyth all hys puyssaunce. And whan they were nygh for tasseble in bataylle, the sarasyns maad a moche subtyl and wylde thyng. For tofore the Sarasyns that were on hersback they had ordeyned men on fote, whyche had vysieres counterfeyted all black rede, horned, and berded lyke deuylles, for to deceyue the crysten men; and eueryche of these foot men bare in hys honde a lytel belle. And at thentre of the bataylle they began to sowne and make suche a bruyt, that assone as the horses of the crysten men sawe them so counterfayted and sowne their bellys, so Impetuously they began to flee, disreng to be aferde, in suche maner that no man might holde theyr horses, but by force they must flee and wythdrawe them. Charles deuysed a remedye, and on the morne he blynfelde the horses and couerd theyr eyen wyth clothes, And stopped theyr eres, to the ende that they shold not see ne here the sarasyns dysguysed countrefayted. And whan they came to bataylle in this manere they spared not, but slewe doun ryght, put the sarasyns to deth tyl mydday; but yet they were not al vaynquysshed, For they had a carte myghty and grete for to resyste and make grete empesshement to theyr enemyes. And this engyne was drawen wyth viij oxen in the warre, ther-vpon(*Note: orig. thre-vpon.*) stode on hye the standard of theyr ensygne. theyr custome was that on payne of deth noo persone, shold retorne, ne goo aback for no thyng as long as the standard stode vpryght. herof Charles was enforced, wherfore moche puyssauntly he rode thurgh the sarasyns tyl he came to the standard, and with Joyouse hys swerde he smote it asondre: and anone as the sarasyns sawe that they fledde, mony of y^e paynims were slayn and dede. on the morne after the towne was delyuerd vnto Charles by the lord of the toun, (*Note: orig. tonn.*) whyche coude not resyste hym, charles was content to lete hym haue hys lyf yf he wold be baptysed, and also the toun for to holde it of hym and none otherwyse. And thenne charles ordeyned in spayne certayn of hys barons to kepe it, in suche wyse, that none durst assaylle it, ne make to it warre. For he was alwaye vycoryous of his enemyes by the puyssaunce that he ledde, and also by dyscrecyon of hys persone, and pryncypally by the grace of god, whyche faylled not in him and in hys subgettes.

How the chyrche of Saynt Iames was halowed by tharchebyssshop Turpyn, the chyrches of spayne subgettes therto, and' of other pryncypal chyrches: capitulo xiiij

Charles the noble emperour, after that he had put and sette good estate and good warde in spayne, he went to saynt Iames wyth fewe people. And whan he was there, suche cristen men as he there fond he rewarded them, dyd to them moche good, and he punysshed suche as were apostates, other maner of peple, suche as he fonde vntryewe and dysobeysaunte to holy chyrche, he lete slee and put to deth, or he sente theym in to fraunce to do penaunce, and bannysshed them. And thenne thorough al the cytees of spayne he ordeyned bysshops, relygyous, and other peple of the chyrche, made many constytucyons, (*Note: orig. constytucyous.*) synodals, and other ordynaunces vp-on the chyrche, and vpon other peple. And in thonour of saynt Iames he made constytucyons, and Instytuled that al the bysshops, prynces, and kynges dwellyng in spayne, shold all be subget to the byssshop of saynt Iames, and al they shold owe to that chyrche fydelyte, wyth al the peple of the londe of galyce. And accordyng to the same the archebisshop Turpyn wryteth in thys manere: "And I, Turpyn, archebisshop of Raynes, was in the same place, where the ordenaunces aforesayd were maad. And I, accompanied wyth ix honourable bysshops of good lyf, at the requeste and postulacyon of Charles in the moneth of Iuyl, haue halowed, dedycated, blessyd, and consecrated the chyrche of saynt Iames, the aulter of the same. And after thenne the kyng Charles gaf al the londe of spayne of galyce to that chyrche, And after ordeyned y^t euery hous of spayn and galyce shold gyue to the cyrche of saynt Iames iiij pens of the money corraunt for annuel (*Note: orig. amuel.*) trybute. And by the moyen therof they shold be franke and free of seruytude. And for the honour of saynt Iames he establysshed that the chyrche of the sayd place shold be sayd apostolyque for the exaltacion of the place. And more ouer, that the bysshopyches and specyal dygnyte of alle spayne of galyce, and semblably the coronacions of kynges of al the contre, shold be crowned sacred by the byssshop of saynt Iames, al in lyke wyse as it hath been tofore doon in Asye in the place of ephesym, for the honour of holy Saynt Iohan theuangelyst, brother of saynt Iames, and sone of Zebedee. thus Saynt Iohan was lodged in the ryght syde, And Saynt Iames, hys brother, in the lyfte syde. Thenne was accomplisshed the peticyon of their moder and of hyr two sones, gloryouse frendes of our lord Ihesu

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

Cryst, whan she desyred that hyr two sones shold sytte, one on the ryght syde, and that other on the lyfte, whyche was thenne accomplysshed and termyned. therefore in the world ben thre syeges and chyrches pryncypal, whyche crysten men by ryght owen texalte, deffende and mayntene wyth all theyr myght. That is to wete, the chyrche of Rome, The chyrche of Ephesym of saynt Iohan the euangelyst, And the chyrche of Saynt Iames in galyce. And yf ony demaunded the cause of these thre places and syeges pryncypal of cristyente, the cause is ynough apparence. These thre places ben honoured pryncypally by cause the synners may haue theyr recours to them for tamende theyr lyues, and put away theyr synnes, obteyne pardon and forgyuenes. Fyrst these iij appostles, that is to say, Saynt Peter, Saynt Iohan, saynt James, haue preceded all the other in the companye of Jhesu Cryst whan he was in thys world, haue ben called to hys secretes, and that haue moost contynued wyth hym. Thus by good ryght, the places in whyche they haue conversed and contynued theyr lyues, and where theyr bodies resten, oughten to be honoured and to be habundaunt in grace. Pryncypally, saynt Peter was the fyrst and moost hie, preched at Rome, and there was martred buried; Therfor the chyrche of Rome is enhaunced exalted aboue al other chyrches. after saynt Iohan, whyche sawe the secretes of god in his souper, in ephesym he made the gospel 'In principio erat verbum cetera,' And by his holy prechyng hath conuerted thynfydellys to the holy crysten fayth. And also saynt James, whyche had grete payne in spayne and in galyce, for the honour of god as wel for hys holy lyf, for hys myracles, as for hys marterdom and hys sepulture, by good ryght ought the memorye of them to be thorough the vnyuersal world."

The second' parte of the thyrd book conteyneth x chapytres, speketh of the treason made by ganellon, and' of the deth of the pyeres of Fraunce.

How the treason was comprysed' by Ganellon, and of the deth of crysten men, how ganellon is repreuyd by thauctour: capitulo primo

In this tyme were in Cezarye two kynges sarasyns moche myghty, that one was named marfurrius, and that other bellegandus, his brother, whyche were sente by thadmyral of babylonne in to spayne, the whyche were vnder kyng Charles, made to hym synge of loue and of subgectyon, and went by hys commaundement holyly and vnder the sadowe of decepcyon. Themperour, seying that they were not crysten, and for to gete seygnourye ouer them, he sente for ganellon, in whome he had fyaunce, that they sold doo baptyse them, or ellys that they shold sende to hym trybute in sygne of fydelyte of their contre. Ganellon, the traytre, went thyder and dyd to them the message, and after that he had with them many deceyuable wordes, they sente hym ageyn to charles wyth xxx hors laden with gold syluer, wyth clothes of sylke, and other rychesses, iij hundred hors laden with swetewyn, for to gyue to the men of Warre for to drynke; also they sente, aboue thys, to them a thousand fayr wymmen sarasyns, in grete poynte and yonge of age: And al thys in sygne of loue and of obeyssaunce. and after they gaf to ganellon xx hors charged wyth gold and syluer, sylkes, and other precyosytees, that by hys moyen he shold brynge in to theyr hondes the companye of charles yf he myght doo it.

Thenne ganellon was surprysed(*Note: "surprysed:"* overcome, taken. Fr. *surpris.*) wyth thys fals auaryce, which consumeth alle the swetenes of charyte that is in persones, for to haue gold or syluer other rychesses, made a pacte and couenaunte wyth the sarasyns for to betraye hys lord, hys neyghbours, crysten brethern, sware that he wold not faylle them of thenterpryse; but I merueylle moche of ganellon, which made thys treason, wythoute to haue(*Note: orig. hane.*) cause coloured ne Juste.

O wycked Ganellon, thou were comen of noblesse, thou hast doon a werke vylaynnous: thou were ryche a grete lord, and for money thou hast betrayed thy mayster. Emonge alle other thou were chosen for to goo to y^c sarasyns for grete trust: emonge al the other, and for the fydelyte that was thought in the, thou hast consented to trayson, and allone hast commysed Infydelyte. Fro whens cometh thyn Inyquyte, but of a fals wylle plunged in thabysme of auaryce? Thy naturel souerayn lord, Roulland, Olyuer, the other, what haue they doon to the? yf thou haue a wycked hate ayenst one persone, wherfore consentest thou to destroye thynnocentes? was there noo persone that thou louedest whan to al crysten men thou hast ben traytre? was there ony reason in the, whan thou hast ben

The second' parte of the thyrd book conteyneth x chapytres, speketh of the treason made by ganellon, and' of the

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

capytayn ayenst the fayth? what auayleth the prowesse that thou hast made in tyme passed, whan thyn ende sheweth that thou hast doo wyckednes? O fals auaryce, and ardeur of concupiscence! he is not the fyrst that by the is comen to myscheyf. by the Adam was to god dysobeysaunt, and the noble cyte of Troye the graunde put to vtter ruyne and destructyon. Thus in thys manere ganellon brought gold and syluer, wyn, wymmen, and other rychesses, as tofore he had enterprysed. Whan charles sawe al this, he thought that al way doon in good entent and equyte and wythout barat. The grete lordes knyghtes toke the wyn for them, and charles took onely the gold and syluer, the moyen people took the hethen wymmen. Themperour gaf consente to the wordes of ganellon, For he spake moche wysely, and wrought in suche wyse that charles and alle hys hoost passed the porte of Cezarye; for ganellon dyd hym to vnderstonde that the kynges aforesayd wold become crysten and be baptysed, and swere fydelyte to the emperour; And anone sent his peple tofore, and he came after in the ryere warde, had sente Roulland Olyuer the moost specyal of hys subgettes wyth a thousand fyghtyng men, and were in Rounyuale. Thenne the kynges Marfuryus Bellegandus, after the counceyl of ganellon, wyth fyfty thousand sarasyns were hydde in a wode, abydyng awaytyng the frenssh men, there they abode ij dayes and two nyghtys, deuyded theyr men in two partyes. In the first they put xx M sarasynz, and in that other they put xxx thousand sarasyns. In the vaunte garde of charles were xx thousand crysten men, whyche anone were assaylled wyth xx thousand sarasyns, and maad warre in suche wyse that they were constrayned to withdrawe them; For fro the mornyng vnto the houre of tyerce they seaced not to fyght and smyte on them, wherfore the crysten men were moche wery, and had nede to reste theym. Neuertheles, they dronken wel of the good swete wyn of the sarasyns moche largely, And after many of them that were dronke went laye by the wymmen sarasynoys, also wyth other that they had brought oute of fraunce, wherfore the wylle of god was that they shold al be dede, to thende that their martyrdom passyon myght be the cause of theyr saucyon purgyng of their synne. For anone after the thyrty thousand sarasyns cam that were in the second batayl vpon the frenssh men soo Impetuovsly that they were al dede and slayn, Except Roulland, bauldouyn, Thyerry. The other were slayn and dede with speres: somme slayn, somme rosted, and other quartred, and submysed to many tormentes. And whan thys dyscomfyture was doon, Ganellon was with charles, and also tharchebysshop Turpyn, whych knewe nothyng of this werke so sorouful, sauf onely the traytre, whyche supposed that they alle had be destroyed and put to deth. Of the languysshe that was comyng to Charles, he wyste not, how sone it was comyng.

Of the deth of kyng Marfurius, and' how Roulland' was hurt wyth foure speres mortally after that al his peple were slayn: capitulo: ij

The bataylle, as I haue sayd tofore, was moche sharpe. whan Rolland, whyche was moche wery, returned he recountred in hys waye a sarasyn moche fyers blacke as boylled pytche, and anone he took hym at thentre of a wode bonde hym to a tree straytely, wythoute doyng to hym ony more harme, and after took and rode vpon an hylle for to see the hoost of the sarasyns, And the crysten men that were fledde: saw grete quantyte of paynmys. Wherfore anone he sowned and blewe his horne of yuorye moche lowde. And wyth that noyse cam to hym an hundred crysten men wel arayed and habyllled wythoute moo. And whan they were come to hym he returned to the sarasyn that was bounde to the tree, And Roulland helde hys swerd ouer hym, sayeng that he shold deye, yf he shewed to hym not clerely the kyng Marfuryus, yf he so wold do he shold not deye. The sarasyn was contente, and sware, that he shold gladly do it for to saue his lyf; soo he brought hym wyth hym vnto the place where they sawe the paynmys, and shewed to Rolland Whyche was the kyng, whyche rode vpon a rede hors, other certeyn tokenes. And in thys poynt Roulland, reconfermed in hys strengthe, trustyng veryly in the myght of god and in the name of Ihesus, as a lyon entred in to the bataylle, emonge them he encountred a sarasyn whyche was gretter than ony of the other, gaf to hym so grete a stroke wyth durandal vpon the hede that he clefted hym hys hors in two partes, that the one parte went on one syde that other on the other syde. wherfore the sarasyns were soo troubled and abasshed of the myght and puyssaunce of Rolland, that they alle fledde tofore hym, thenne abode the kyng Marfuryus wyth a fewe folke. Thenne rolland sawe thys kyng, And wythoute fere came to hym and put hym to deth Incontynent. And alle the hondred crysten men that were wyth Roulland in thys recountre were dolorously slayn put to deth, Except onely baulduyn and Thyerry, whyche for fere fledde in to the wode. But after that Rolland had slayn kyng Marfuryus he was sore oppressyd, in suche wyse deteyned that wyth foure grete speres he

Of the deth of kyng Marfurius, and' how Roulland' was hurt wyth foure speres mortally after that al his peple were

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

was smyton and wounded mortally, beten with stoones, and hurte wyth dartes and other shotte mortally. And not withstondyng these greuouse hurte woundes, yet, maulgre al the sarasyns, he sprange out of the bataylle, and saued hym self the best wyse he myght. Bellegandus, broder of Marfuryus, doubtyng that helpe ayde shold come to the crysten people, returned in to another contreye (*Note: orig. coutreye.*), wyth hys peple moche hastely. And themperour Charles had thenne passed the montayne of Roncyuale, and knewe nothyng of these thynges afore sayd, ne what had be doon.

How Rolland deyed' holyly, after many martyres orysones made to god ful deuoutely, of the complaynte maad' for hys swerde durandal: capitulo iij

Rolland the valyaunt, and champion of the crysten fayth, was moche sorouful of the crysten men, by cause they had noo socours; he was moche wery, gretely abasshed, moche affebled in hys persone, for he had lost moche of his blode by his foure mortal woundes, of whyche the leste of them was suffysaunt for hym to haue deyed, and he had grete payne to gete hym oute fro the sarasyns for to haue a lytel commemoracion of god tofore or the soule shold departe fro his body. so moche he enforced hym, that he came to the fote of a montayne, nygh to the porte of Cezarye, and brought hym self nygh to a rocke ryght by Roncyuale, vnder a tree in a fayr medowe. whan he sat down on the grounde he behelde his swerde, the best that euer was, named durandal, whyche is as moche to say as gyuyng an hard stroke, whyche was ryght fayr rychely made: the handle was of fyn beryle, shynyng meruallously; on hys it had a fayre crosse of gold, in the which was wryton the name of Ihesus. It was so good fyn, that sonner shold the arme faylle than the swerde. he took it out of y^e shethe sawe it shyne moche bryght, and by cause it shold chaunge his maister he had moche sorowe in his hert, and wepyng, he sayd in thys maner pytously: "O swerd of valure, the fayrest that euer was, thou were neuer but fayr, Ne neuer fonde I the but good: thou art long by mesure; Thou hast be so moche honoured, that alwaye thou barest with the the name of the blessyd Ihesus, sauour of the world, whyche hath endowed the wyth the power of god. who may comprehend thy valure? Alas! who shal haue the after me? who someuer hath the shal neuer be vaynquysshed, alwaye he shal haue good fortune. Alas! what shal I more ouer say for the, good swerde? many sarasyns haue ben destroyed by the; thynfydels and myscreauntes haue ben slayn by the; the name of god is exalted by the; by the is made the path of sauement. O, how many tymes haue I by the auenged thyniurye made to god! O, how many men haue I smyton and cutte a-sondre by the myddle! O, my swerde, whyche hast ben my comfort and my Joye, whych neuer hurtest persone that myght escape fro deth! O, my swerde, yf ony persone of noo value shold haue the I knewe it, I shold deye for sorowe." After that Rolland had wepte ynough, he had fere that somme paynym myght fynde it after his deth, wherfore he concluded (*Note: orig. cencluded.*) in hym self to breke it, and toke it smote it vpon a rocke wyth alle hys myght iij tymes wythoute hurtyng ony thyng the swerde, and cleft the rocke to therthe, and coude in no wyse breke the swerde. Whan he sawe the facyon and coude do nomore therto, he took his horne, whyche was of yuorye moche rychely made, and sowned blewe it moche strongely, to the ende that yf there were ony crysten men hydde in the wodes or in the waye of theyr retournyng, that they shold come to hym tofore they wente ony ferther, and to fore he rendred hys sowle. Thenne, seyng that none came, he sowned it ageyn by soo grete force and vertu, and so Impetuously, that the horne roof a sondre in the myddle, and the vaynes of hys necke braken a sondre, and the synewes of his body stratched. And that noys or voys by the grace of god came to the eeres of Charles, whyche was eyght myle fro hym. The Emperour, heeryng the horne, he knewe wel that Rolland had blowen it, and wold haue returned ageyn, but Ganellon, the traytre, whyche knewe wel alle the fayt, dystourned (*Note: "dystourned:" turned him away, dissuaded him. Fr. le destourba.*) hym, in sayeng that Rolland had blowen his horne for somme wyld beest that he chaced for his playsyr; For ofte tymes he wold blowe hys horne for lytel thyng, and that he shold not doubte of nothyng. And thus he dyd the kyng to vnderstonde that he byleued hym, and made none other semblaunte. Neuertheles, Rolland, leying in thys sorowe, he peased hys woundes also wel as he myght, and stratched hymself on the grasse to the fresshenes for to forgete hys thurst, whyche was ouer grete.

Here vpon Baulduyn, hys brother, came vnto hym, whyche was moche heuy and sorouful for hys brother Roulland, whyche was in that necessaryte. And anone Roulland sayd to hym, "my frende and my brother, I haue so

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

grete thurst that I must nedes deye yf I haue not drynke to aswage my thurst.

Baulduyn had grete payne in goyng here and there, and coude fynde no water, and came to hym ageyn sayde he coude fynde none; and in grete anguysshe he lepte (*Note: orig. lefte; "lepte:" corrected on the authority of the original French, which reads *monta.**) on Roullandes hors, and rode for to fetche charles, For he knewe wel that rolland was nyghe hys deth. Anone after came to hym Thyerry, duc of Ardayne, whyche wepte vpon Rolland so contynuelly that he myt not speke. but with grete payne Rolland confessyd hym and dysposed hym of hys conscyence. neuertheles, that same day Rolland had receyued the body of our lord, For the custome was that the subgettes of Charles that day whyche they shold fyght were confessyd comuned wythoute fayllyng by men of the chyrche, which alway were wyth them. Rolland, whyche knew hys ende by entyer contemplacyon, hys eyen lyfte vp to heuen, hys hondes Ioyned, al stratched in the medowe, began to say thus: "Fayre lord god, my maker, my redemour, sone of the gloryous moder of comferte, thou knowest myn entencyon, thou knowest what I haue doon for the bounte that is in the. by thy grete mercy of wyche thou art enuyronned, by the grace whyche in the haboundeth, by the meryte of thy passyon, holy and bytter, with a good and humble hert I requyre the y^l tofore the thys day my faultes, synnes, and ygnoraunces may be pardouned to me, and take noo regarde to the trespasses that I haue doon to the; but beholde that I deye for the, and in the fayth that thou hast ordeyned. remembre that thou hengest on the tree of the crosse for the synnars, and so as thou hast redemed me, I beseche the that I be not loste. Alas! my maker god omnypotent, wyth good wylle I departed oute of my contreye for to defende thy name, and for to mayntene crystendom. Thou knowest that I haue suffred many anguysshes of hungre, of thurst, of hete, of colde, many mortal woundes. And day and nyght to the, my god, I yelde me culpable; I mystrust not thy mercy. thou art pyetous; thou art comen for the synnars; thou pardonest marye magdelene and the good thief on the crosse, by cause they returned vnto the; they were synnars as I am; lyke as they dyd I crye the mercy, better yf I coude saye it. thou byheldest how Abraham was obeyssaunt to the of hys sone ysaac, wherfor he ferde moche the better; byholde me how I am obedyent to the commaundements of the chyrche: I byleue in the, I loue the aboue all other, I loue my neyghbour. O good lord, I beseche the to pardoune forgyue alle theym that thys day ben deed in my companye, that they may be saued. Also, my maker, I requyre the to take hede of the pacyence of Job, for which he was moche the better, that I deye here for thurst, and am allone. I am wounded mortally, and may not helpe my self, and take in pacyence alle the sorowe that I suffre, and am therwyth content whan it pleaseth the. as al thys is trewe, pardone me, comferte my spyryte, receyue my soule, and brynge me to reste perdurable." Whan Rolland had prayed thus, he sette hys handes on hys body, holdyng hys flesshe, and after sayd thre tymes, "*Et in carne mea videbo deum saluatorem meum,*" and after layed his handes on hys eyen, and sayd, "*Et oculi isti conspecturi sunt,* In thys flesshe that I holde I shal see my sauour, and these eyen shal beholde hym;" and after he sayd that he sawe thynges celestyal, whyche the eyen of mankynde myght not see, ne the eeres here, ne the hert thynke, the glorye whyche god hath maad redy to them that loue hym; and in sayeng, "*In manus tuas, domine, commendo spiritum meum,*" he layed hys armes vpon hys body in maner of a crosse, gaf and rendred hys soule to god the xvj kalendes of Juyl.

Of the vysyon of the deth of Roulland', and' of the sorowe of Charles, and' how he complayned' hym pyetously, other maters: capitulo iiij

"The day that Roulland the marter rendred hys soule vnto god, I, Turpyn, archebysshop of Raynes, was in the valeye of Rouncyuale, tofore charles the Emperour, and sayd masse for the soules whyche were passed oute of thys world. And as I was in the secrete of the masse I was rauysshed, and herde the aungellys of heuen synge and make grete melodye. And I wyst not what it myght be, ne wherfore they soo dyd. And as I sawe the aungellys mounte in to heuen on ye, I sawe comyng a grete legyon of knyghtes, alle blacke, ageynst me, the whyche bere a praye, wherof they maad grete noyse and desraye. whan they were tofore me in passyng, I sayd to them and demaunded who they (*Note: orig. w hothey.*) were, what they bare. One of the deuylls ansuerd sayd, 'we bere the kyng Marfuryus in to helle, for long a—goon he hath wel deserued it. And Roulland, your trompette, wyth Mychel thaungel many other in his companye, is brout in to Joye perdurable to heuen.' And as the masse was fynysshed I recounted to charles the vysyon whyche I had seen, how thangellys of heuen bare the soule of Roulland in to

Of the vysyon of the deth of Roulland', and' of the sorowe of Charles, and' how he complayned' hym pyetously,

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

paradys, the deuylles bare the soule of a sarasyn in to helle. Thus, as I sayd these wordes, balduyn, whyche rode on Rollandes hors, cam hastely and said to charles how the crysten men were dede bytrayed, and how Rolland was hurte, and in what estate he had lefte hym. Assone as he had tolde thys, the crye was made thurgh thoost that euery man shold retorne backe, there was a grete bruyt. But themperour Charles, to whome thys mater touched at the hert more than to ony other, auauunced hym for to goo thyder; and whan he came he fonde Rolland expyred, hys hondes in crosse vpon hys vysage al stratched. And anone Charles fyl doun vpon hym, and began to wepe moche tenderly, smytyng hym on his vysage, rendyng his clothes, tormented hys body, myght not speke a grete whyle. whan he was returned to hym self by ardeur of dylectyon and excercyte of sorowe, he sayd in thys wyse: 'O comforte of my body, honour of frenssh men, suerd of Iustyce, spere that myght not bowe, hawberck that myght not be broken, helme of helthe, resemylyng to Iudas(*Note: orig. Indas.*) machabeus in prowesse, samblant to sampson in strengthe, to Absalon in beaulte! O ryght dere neuwe, fayr wyse, in batayl ryal! O destroyer of the sarasyns, defendour of crysten men, walle of clergye, staffe to wydowes of poure orphelyns, Releuer of chyrches, tonge of trouthe, Mouthe wythout lesyng, trewe in al Iugement, prynce of bataylle, conduytour of the frendes of god, Augmentour of the crysten fayth, byloued of euery persone! Alas! why haue I brought the in to a straunge contreye? wherfor am I not dede with(*Note: orig. thith.*)the? O Roulland, wherfor leuest thou me heuy sorouful? helas! caytyf that I am, what shal I doo? Alas! sorouful, whyther shal I goo? I praye to almyghty god that he conserue the; I requyre thangellis of heuen that they be in thy companye; I requyre the marters, of whom thou art of the nombre, y^t they wyl receuye the in to the Ioye perdurable. alway I shal remembre the wepyng, alway I shal fele thy departyng, as dauyd dyd of natan of absalon. Alas! Rolland, thou goost in to lyf Ioye perdurable, leuest me in thys world sorouful. Thou art in heuen in consolacion, I am in wepynges tribulacions. Alle the world is euyl content of thy deth, thangellys hath brout the in comforte.' In thys manere and otherwyse Charles bewept and sorowed his neuwe Roulland. And he made hys tentys to be sette vp there, for to lodge there al that nyght, dyd doo make grete fyres and grete lyghtes for to wathe the body of Roulland; after he dyd do enoynte hys body with myrre baulme and other thynges aromatiques, for to conserue the body from euyl sauour; and his obsequyes were made, hys entyerment with grete prayers, offrynges, almesses in grete contemplacion."

How Olyuer was founden slayn, and' of the deth of the sarasyns, of the deth of ganellon, whyche was hydous: capitulo v

In the morne erly, charles came where the bataylle had been with his peple, and there they fonde the noble Olyuer stratched oute in maner of a crosse, whyche was fastned to foure stakes with iiij cordes sharply bounden, and fro the necke to the nayles or vngles of his feet and handes he was flayn; he was al to-hewen, and shotte hurte wyth speres, sharp dartes, quarellys, arowes, beten wyth staues; he was al to-faished and broken. (*Note: "to-faished and broken:" Fr. il estoit naure, casse, et tout rompu*) wherfore the crye of many of the crysten began to renewe for the hydous deth of Olyuer, and of many other. wherfore Charles sware by god almyghty that he wold neuer cesse tyl that he had founden the sarasyns, forthwyth he went wyth his hoost noblesse. and by cause that the paynymys were moche (*Note: orig. mocbe.*) ferre fro them, god shewed a fayr myracle; For that same day was prolonged thre dayes longe wythout that the sonne remeued ony thyng. and they fonde the sarasyns by a ryuer named Ebra in Cezarye, whyche rested them, and ete dranke at theyr ease, wythout doubtyng of ony thyng. and charles hys peple came vpon them so Impetuously that in a litel whyle there were slayn iiij M sarasyns, and the other fledde saued them self. Thenne themperour, seyng that he myght goo no ferther, returned to rounyuale, And began tenquyre vpon the fayt of trayson, and who had doon it, what man. Thenne he was enformed that Ganellon had made it, and that was the comune oppynyon of them alle. And emonge alle other Thyerry accused and appeled hym of the treason, and that he wold fyght in the quarel. For Thyerry had knowleche by the sarasyn that rolland had bounden to a tree. The kyng charles ordeyned a knyght for ganellon, named pynable, to fyt ayenst thyerry. And whan these ij champyons were in the lystes, anone pynalle was slayne by Thyerry; and as wel by thys moyen as by other, it appered clerely that ganellon had bytrayed them. wherfore the emperour Charles, wythoute goyng ony ferther, dyd to take iiij grete horses, made to sytte on them iiij stronge men, bonde ganellon to two horses by his ij handes, and bonde the two feet to the other ij horses, made hym to be drawen with the one hors toward y^e eest, that other toward the weste, that other ayenst the southe, and that other toward the north. In

How Olyuer was founden slayn, and' of the deth of the sarasyns, of the deth of ganellon, whyche was hydous: 98

this maner eche of the hors drewe forth his quarter of the body of the parte whyche he was bounden vnto.

How after the thynges afore sayd' charles gaf thankynges preysynges to god saynt Denys, of the constytucions that he made in fraunce: capitulo vj

Whan the executyon was doon of Ganellon and executed, charles hys people cam in to the place where the frensshe men had be slayn, bygan to knowe theyr parents, frendes, lordes, for to bere them in to halowed place. they caryed somme vpon theyr horses; Other salted them wyth salte, for to mayntene them to brynge them in to theyr contreye; Other buryed them in the same place, somme bare theym on their sholdres. Somme ennoynted them wyth oylle and myrre, somme wyth baulme the best wyse they myght. Neuertheles, there were two cymytoyres or chircheyerdes, ryght deuoute pryncypally halowed emonge the other, whych were sacred and blessyd wyth vij bysshops. That one of the cymytoyres was in arles, and that other in burdegale. Saynt maxymyen of ays, Saynt Trophyn of arles, poule of nerbonne, Saynt Saturyn of Tholouse, saynt fontyn of poytyers, saynt Marcel of lymoges, and saynt Eutrope of xayntes had sacred and halowed them. In whyche places were buryed the moost party of the frensshe men slayn and destroyed in rounyuale. Themperour dyd do bere rolland, the glorious marter, vpon two mules couerd wyth clothes of sylke, honourably vnto bloye, in the chyrche of saynt Romayn, the whyche he had edefyed and founded wyth chanonnes regular, he dyd rychely burye hym, and wyth grete magnyfycence; on hys ouer his sepulture, he dyd do sette hys swerde, and at hys feet he dyd do sette his horne of yuorie. Not wythstondyng, after, the horne was taken awaye and borne to Saynt Seueryn at bourdeaws. At bourdeaulx were buryed olyuer gaudeboy, kyng of Fryse, Ogyer, kyng of denmark; and Crestayn, kyng of bretayne; Garyn, duc of Lorayne, and many other. As for Eaferus, kyng of bourdeaulx; Euglerius, kyng of guyan; lambert, kyng of bourges, and galerus reynaut, with v M other, charles gaf xij C vneces of syluer of money that tyme courant, as moche of talents of gold, many robes and mete to poure peple, for sauacyon of their soules. and al the londe seuen myle aboute he gaf to the chyrche of saynt Romayn, and maad it subgette to that relygyon. And al bloye, wyth thappertenautes and the see ayenst the sayd terrytorye, he gaf semblably to the sayd cyrche for charyte loue of Rolland, and ordeyned it so for euer. and on the day of their passyon he ordeyned that in the same place shold euery yere perpetuelly xxx poure men be fedde and clothed competently, and thyrty messys songen for them that there were buryed and entyered, and for alle them that were dede in spayne for the crysten fayth. In Arles was buryed the counte of lengres; samson, duc of bourgoyne; Naymes, duc of bauyere; Arnold de bellandus, and Albert bourgoynon, and other fyue knyghtes, wyth ten thousand other moyen peple. Constantyn, prouoste of Rome, was borne to Rome wyth many other Romayns, and for y^e remedye of theyr soules themperour gaf in arles for almesse xij C vneces of syluer and xij talentes of gold, whyche was worth a grete somme of gold syluer courant in that tyme.

How Charles wente in to Almayne, where he deyed' holyly, And of hys deth shewed to Turpyn, and' of hys buryeng' Imperyally: capitulo vij

After the thynges afore sayd, Themperour charles and Turpyn, wyth the other, came and passed by vyenne; there Turpyn tharchebysshop, a moche holy man, abode, for he was wery and moche febled of the payne that he had had for the fayth in spayne. and Charles wente to parys, anone after he assemaled al the nobles and the moost grettest lordes of hys contreye, for to establyssh certayn ordynaunces, and for to gyue thankynges to god to saynt Denys of the vycorye that he had obteyned in his tyme vpon the sarasyns, paynims, myscreautes. And after that he had thanked god and saynt denys, and to his chyrche fast by parys, lyke as saynt Poule thappostle and saynt Clement the pope had doon in tyme passed, he maad constytucyon entyere that al the kynges of Fraunce present to come shold obeye to the pastour that shold be for y^e tyme of that chyrche, and that neuere kyng shold be crowned wythoute the pastour of that chyrche, ne the bysshop of parys shold not be receyued at Rome wythout hys consent comandement. And he gaf many rychesses to y^e chirche, in token that fraunce was gyuen to that chyrche of saynt denys, he ordeyned that euery possessour in al y^e nacyon of fraunce shold gyue be bounden to gyue to the chyrche of saynt denys, for to edefye augmente it, iiij pens of money courant yerely perpetuelly, al they that shold gyue it wyth a good wylle, yf they were of bonde serue condycion, he wold they shold be franke

How after the thynges afore sayd' charles gaf thankynges preysynges to god saynt Denys, of the constytucions

free of condycyon. And after anone these thynges ordeyned, he went came tofore the body of saynt denys moche deuoutely, there he prayed the glorious saynt that he wold praye vnto our lord Ihesu Cryst, that alle they y^lwere dede of the crysten fayth in the tyme that he had regned that they myght be saued, and that the payne that they had taken myt be to them the crowne of martyrdom in the glorye perdurable; in semblable wyse he prayed for al them that wold paye gladly the pens aforesayd to his chyrche. As god wold, that nyght folowyng saynt denys appyered to hym, sayd to ym in thys manere: "O kynge, vnderstonde me, knowe thou, that I haue made prayer to god, my maker, he hath graunted that alle they that haue been ayenst the sarasyns with the haue pardon of al theyr trespaces, that wyllingly shal paye the penyes for the edefycacyon of my chyrche augmentyng the seruyce of god, they shal haue amendement of lyf and pardon of theyr synnes." This vysyon on the morne themperour recounted to hys peple, lyke as he had herd, by cause they shold wyth a good wyll pay the penyes that he had ordeyned; he that gaf it was called the franke of saynt denys, by cause that he was free and quyte of al seruage by the commandement of the kyng. After came the custome that that londe whyche was called Gallia loste hys name, was called fraunce, as it is named at thys day, Fraunce is as moche to say as free of al seruage anenst al peple; and therefore the lordes of Fraunce for this cause emonge al crysten men owen to be honoured prayed.

The recapitulacion of alle thys werke, of his deth at Acon, of hys sepulture: capitulo viij

The kyng Charles contynued gloriously his lyf in vertuose operacyons, And whan he felte the declyne of hys lyf he went vnto Acon, where he had tofore doon moche good, enobled a chyrche of our lady the rounde, the whyche he dyd do make, and gaf therto grete tresour of relyques of bodyes of sayntes, of gold syluer, of clothes of sylke, other precyosytees meruayllous, and there he deyed in the yere of hys age lxxij. for the magnyfycence of hys werkes he was called charles the grete; he had iij sones thenne lyuyng, of whom the fyrst was named Charles, the second Pepyn, the thyrd Lowys; also he had iij doughters, that one was named Rotrudys, that other berga, the thyrd gylla. whan he knewe that he myght noo longer lyue, hys sone lowys, whome he had ordeyned for specyal loue kyng of guyan, he lefte to hym the mageste Imperyal. For to knowe the holynes the gloryous ende of Charles, how he was saued in heuen, and renommed an holyman, The deuoute Turpyn, archebyssshop of Raynes, sayth in this manere, "I Turpyn, archbyshop of Raynes, was in vyenne in the chyrche tofore thaulter, was rauysshed in sayeng the psalm, '*Deus in adiutoryum*(Note: orig. *adintoryum*.) *meum intende*.' I sawe a companye of blacke peple lyke Ethyopyens, whych were in quantyte Innumerable, whyche went toward lorayne; and I sawe one tofore hys felowes, I demaunded hym whyther al they wente. the whyche, beyng constrayned to ansuere, sayd, 'we alle goo to Acon to the deth of Charles, whyche lyeth a—dyeng. And we wyl see yf we may haue hys soule for to bere in to helle to perpetuel dampnacyon.' Thenne I sayd to hym, 'I adiure the by the vertue of the name of our Lord Ihesu cryst that, wythoute fayllyng, after that ye haue doon, that thou retorne by me.'" Anone after, or he coude fynnysshe hys psalme, the deuylles cam retournyng ageyn in the same ordre that they wente. "And thenne I sayd to hym that I had spoken to byfore, 'what haue ye doon there as ye haue been?' that same deuyl answered, that 'James of galyce, frende to charles, hath ben moche contrarye to vs, for whan we were redy for to receyue hys soule, and had egally departed his good dedes and his euyl, he brought so many stones tymbre of chyrches, whyche he had doo make in the name of hym, that his good dedes surmounted moche his euyl dedes, wherfore we myght haue noo thyng ne parte;' thys sayd, the deuyl vanysshed awaye," soo he loste hys vysyon. Thus Charles, in the moneth of feueryere, rendred his soule to god holyly. For after that he returned fro spayn he dyd but languysshe appayre in hys body toward hys deth; in hys ende he ordeyned many almesses, to say many masses psaulters. And the vysyon that the gloryous archebyssshop Turpyn sawe, is sygnyfycacion that he whyche maynteneth and edefyeth chyrches in thys present world, that he maketh preparacyon of hys syege in heuen. His sepulture was moche honourable emonge al the sepultures of the world, noble and ryche excellently, and so fayr that it myt not be amended. and ouer hys tombe was maad an arche of gold syluer and of precyous stones, comprysed by grete scyence. thyder came Leo the pope, accompanied wyth prynces Romayns, archebyssshops, bysshops, Abbottes, Dukes, Erles, and many other lordes, and dyd do make a fayre representacyon of the body of Charles, clad rychely and Imperyally with a fayre crowne of gold sette on his hede, satte vpon a chayer of gold moche fayre and shynyng, and resembled wel a notable Iuge lyuyng. and they sette vpon his knees notably the texte of the four gospels in fayre letters of gold,

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

wyth the ryt hande he helde the lettre, in the lyfte hande he helde the ceptre Imperial, moche ryche; by cause the heed shold not encline to eyther syde, hit was vnder set wyth a chayne of gold susteyned. And the crowne that was on ys heed raught to the arche, whiche was al aboute wel made, the conduytes of the sepulture were replenysshed with al good odours aromatyques precyous, and after closed shette moche subtlylly, honourably kepte, as it was wel worthy for to be doon.

Thexcusacyon of thauctour. ix

This werke, accomplysshed to the playsyr of god tofore wryton, conteyneth thre bookes, by the chapytres deuyded, as it appereth openly to the reders, and I haue made them thre, after that I haue comprysed in the separacyon and deuydyng of the matyer. Of whyche the fyrst book speketh of the begynnyng of fraunce, and of the fyrst crysten kyng of fraunce, whyche was named Cloys by the moyen of his wyf clotildys, in descendyng to kyng Pepyn, fader of themperour Charles, In the honour of whome thys book is composed for the moost parte; to the whyche Pepyn the lygnage of kyng Cloys took an ende in successyon of the Royalme of Fraunce. And the sayd fyrst book sayth, more ouer, how Charles was nourrysshed, of hys corpulence, of hys etyng, of hys strengthe, of hys scyence, other werkes of magnyfycence. The second book speketh of the bataylle that Olyuer dyd ayenst Fyerabras, the meruayllous geaunte, sone of ballant, Admyral of spayne, a puyssaunt kynge; al the fyrst parte of the second book is attributed to noble olyuer, and in the honour of hym. After ye shal fynde how the peres of fraunce were deteyned in Aygremore and put in surete, after saued fynably by florypes, the curtoys doughter of the sayd ballant; And the holy relyques recoured, and other maters of grete meruaylles. The iij book speketh how, by reuelacyon of saynt Iames, charles went and conquerd spayne galyce, where as he dyd operacions vertuous, made constytucyons of sauacyon, wyth many bataylles doon by hym and hys subgettes; and fynably of the trayson of Ganellon, by the whyche the deth of Rolland was pyetous, the deth of Olyuer dolorouse, and of the other peres of crysten knyghtes slayn dede. And fynably the deth of Charles themperour, as tofore is sayd and wryton. and after that ony persone wyl here or rede of thys matere, the table made atte begynnyng shal shewe it to hym lyghtly, yf it be hys playsyr to here or rede of y^e werk in thys book composed.

Thenuoye of thauctour: ca. x

As I haue sayd at the begynnyng of thys present werke, the escriptures and feates somme haue ben reduced in wrytyng for to be in memorye, to the ende that they that haue doon wel, be to vs ensaumple in ensyewyng and folowyng them, they that haue doon euyl may be cause to rewle our lyf for to come to the porte of helthe. For the comune vnderstandyng is more contente to reteyne parables and examples for the ymagynacion locall, than to symple auctoryte, the whyche is reteyned by vnderstandyng, and also semblably thystoryes spekyng of our lord Ihesu cryst, of hys myracles, of his vertuous subgettes, euery man out gladly to here and retenne them. it is so, that at the requeste of the sayd venerable man to fore named, Maister henry bolonnyer, chanonne of lausanne, I haue been Incyted to translate reduyse in prose in to Frensshe the mater tofore reduced. as moche as toucheth the fyrst the thyrd book I haue taken drawn oute of a book named myrroure hystoryal for the moost parte; the second book I haue onely reduced it out of an olde romaunce in frensshe. And without other Informacyon than of the same book, I haue reduced it in to prose, substancyally wythout fayllyng, by ordynaunce of chapytres partyes of the sayd book, after the mater in the same conteyned. And yf in al thys book I haue mesprysed or spoken otherwyse than good langage, substancyally ful of good vnderstandyng to al makers clerkes, I demaunde correyon and amendement, and of the defaultes pardon. For yf the penne hath wryton euyl, the hert thought it neuer, but entended to say wel; also my wytte vnderstandyng, whyche is ryght lytel, can not vtte ne wryte thys matere withoute error. Neuertheles, who so vnderstondeth wel the lettre shal wel compryse myn entencyon, by which he shal fynde nothyng but moyen for to come to saluacyon. To the whyche may fynably come alle they that wyllyngly rede, or here, or do thys book to be redde.

Amen.

Lyf of the noble and Crysten prynce, Charles the Grete

And by cause I, Wylliam Caxton, was desyred requyred by a good and synguler frend of myn, Maister wylliam daubeny, (*Note: "daubeny." See Introduction, p. 7.*) one of the tresorers of the Iewellys of the noble moost crysten kyng, our naturel and souerayn lord, late of noble memorye, kyng Edward the fourth, on whos soule Ihesu haue mercy, To reduce al these sayd hystories in to our Englysshe tongue, I haue put me in deuoyr to translate thys sayd book, as ye heretofore may se al a-longe and playn, prayeng alle them that shal rede, see, or here it, to pardon me of thys symple rude translacyon and reducyng, bysechyng theym that shal fynde faute to correcte it, in so doyng they shal deserue thankynge, I shal praye god for them, who brynge them and me, after this short and transytorye lyf, to euerlastyng blysse. Amen. the whyche werke was fynysshed in the reducyng of hit in to englysshe, the xvij day of Iuyn, the second yere of kyng Rychard the thyrd, And the yere of our lord MCCCC lxxxv, And enprynted the fyrst day of decembre, the same of our lord, the fyrst yere of kyng Harry the seuenth.

Explicit per William Caxton.